Functional and Luxury Foods Research Project

Functional and Luxury Foods opportunities for South Australia in Asia
Contents

List of tables ................................................................................................................................................. 7
Reference Report ................................................................................................................................................. 7
Functional Foods ................................................................................................................................................ 7
Luxury Foods ...................................................................................................................................................... 7
List of figures ...................................................................................................................................................... 8
Reference Report ................................................................................................................................................ 8
Functional food ................................................................................................................................................... 8
Luxury food ......................................................................................................................................................... 8
THE PROJECT .................................................................................................................................................... 9
Project organisation ........................................................................................................................................... 9
Introduction .................................................................................................................................................. 10
Project report documents ................................................................................................................................. 10
Notes for the use of this Reference Report ....................................................................................................... 10
Objectives and study design ............................................................................................................................... 10
Development of recommendations ................................................................................................................... 11
Definitions ..................................................................................................................................................... 12
Methodology .................................................................................................................................................. 14
Phase 1: Value chain analysis ............................................................................................................................ 14
Phase 2: Preliminary market and technology assessment .................................................................................. 15
Phase 3: Development of future pathways ....................................................................................................... 16
Survey Participants ......................................................................................................................................... 17
Industry Environment ...................................................................................................................................... 18
The South Australian food industry .................................................................................................................. 18
Value Chain Analysis ....................................................................................................................................... 21
The South Australian food industry value chain ............................................................................................... 23
Macro level factors affecting the industry ........................................................................................................ 28
Company performance ranked against global competition .......................................................................... 30
Core, transformation and context functions ..................................................................................................... 32
Core functions .................................................................................................................................................. 32
Transformation Functions .................................................................................................................................. 33
Context Functions ........................................................................................................................................... 34
SWOT analysis ................................................................................................................................................ 36
Technology Assessment .................................................................................................................................. 40
Technology readiness ....................................................................................................................................... 40
Digitalisation of food industry .......................................................................................................................... 42
Potential customers and markets ................................................................. 91
Required capabilities and competencies .................................................. 91
Key enabling technologies .......................................................................... 92
Required infrastructure and ecosystem .................................................... 93
Companies in the field ............................................................................... 94
Pathway 3: Active, intelligent and polysensual packaging solutions ............ 95
Background .................................................................................................. 95
General needs and requirements ............................................................... 95
Potential customers and markets ............................................................... 96
Required capabilities and competencies .................................................. 96
Key enabling technologies .......................................................................... 96
Required infrastructure and ecosystem .................................................... 97
Companies in the field (active and intelligent packaging): ....................... 100
Pathway 4: Luxury food business strategy uptake and export promotion .... 101
Background .................................................................................................. 101
General needs and requirements ............................................................... 101
Potential customers and markets ............................................................... 102
Required capabilities and competencies for the luxury food companies ..... 102
Key enabling technologies .......................................................................... 103
Required infrastructure and ecosystem .................................................... 103
Companies in the field ............................................................................... 105
Luxury food brand marketing ..................................................................... 105
Pathway 5: Luxury wine driven culinary tourism ...................................... 106
Background .................................................................................................. 106
General targets ............................................................................................ 107
Potential customers and markets ............................................................... 107
Potential revenue streams in 3–5 years .................................................... 109
Required capabilities and competencies .................................................. 110
Key enabling technologies .......................................................................... 110
Required infrastructure and ecosystem .................................................... 110
Required capabilities and competencies .................................................. 110
Key enabling technologies .......................................................................... 110
Required infrastructure and ecosystem .................................................... 110

**Functional Foods** .................................................................................. 112
Introduction .................................................................................................. 112
Opportunities in functional food ............................................................... 113
Roadmap for functional food ...................................................................... 116
Trends .......................................................................................................... 116
Regulation ................................................................................................. 121
List of tables

Reference Report

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Companies interviewed for survey by type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Key food industries in South Australia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Type and number of farms by industry class</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Value of agricultural production in South Australia 2012-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>PESTLE analysis summary: Local factors affecting the industry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>SWOT analysis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>TRLs of assessed technologies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>E-Commerce sales in Australia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Examples of commercially available indicators for food packaging</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Examples of supporting actors in South Australian food business ecosystem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Suggested pathways for functional and luxury foods in South Australia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Examples of research institutions in the area of food technology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Active and intelligent packaging functions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Key companies in active and intelligent packaging business</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Functional Foods

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A1</td>
<td>Functional foods in South Australia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A2</td>
<td>Functional food Opportunities</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Luxury Foods

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>B1</td>
<td>Luxury foods in South Australia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B2</td>
<td>Luxury food Opportunities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B3</td>
<td>Aspects of luxury packaging</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B4</td>
<td>A reputation for quality food</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B5</td>
<td>Free Trade Agreements between Australia and other countries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B6</td>
<td>Opportunity landscape for luxury seafood</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# List of figures

## Reference Report

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Figure</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Example of an industry value chain: wine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>The food chain without third parties</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>The food chain with third parties</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>The South Australian food value chain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Company performance against global competition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Benefits of HPP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>3D pasta printing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Commercialised intelligent RFID-based system for wines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Anti-counterfeiting and traceability technologies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Basic Roadmap Structure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Modified Roadmap Structure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Actor mapping in an innovative ecosystem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Opportunity landscape for the South Australian food industry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Primary opportunities in luxury and functional food chains</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Enabling opportunities for adding value to luxury and functional food chains</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Productivity improvements enabled by digitalisation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>Future pathways design for project groupwork</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Groupwork for Pathway 1: Future technology adoption</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>Functions of a regional centre for food innovation and research</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Group work output for Pathway 2: Ingredients for functional foods</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>Value chain and potential added value of applications related to faba beans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>Flow diagram and mass balances of faba bean fractionation and fermentation process</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>Processing and investment costs of faba bean production based on two different capacities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>Group work output for Pathway 3: Active and intelligent packaging</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>Group work output for Pathway 4: Branding and differentiation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>Group work output for Pathway 5: Food tourism for Asian consumers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>4E model of experience economy in the context of wine tourism</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Functional food

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Figure</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A1</td>
<td>Preliminary roadmap for functional food</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A2</td>
<td>Ten important food trends in 2015</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Luxury food

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Figure</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>B1</td>
<td>Roadmap for wine as luxury food</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B2</td>
<td>Roadmap for chocolate as luxury food</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B3</td>
<td>Roadmap for seafood as luxury food</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B4</td>
<td>Roadmap for truffles as luxury food</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B5</td>
<td>Roadmap for cheese as luxury food</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B6</td>
<td>Roadmap for Wagyu beef as luxury food</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
THE PROJECT

Project organisation

Project manager: Maria Saarela, VTT

Phase 1


Subcontractors: ESSEC Business School (Paris and Singapore), Frost & Sullivan (Australia) Pty Ltd, Food Innovation Centre of Mondelez Australia Pty Ltd.

Phase 2


Subcontractors: ESSEC Business School (Paris and Singapore), Frost & Sullivan (Australia) Pty Ltd, Food Innovation Centre of Mondelez Australia Pty Ltd.

Phase 3


Subcontractors: ESSEC Business School (Paris and Singapore), Frost & Sullivan (Australia) Pty Ltd, Food Innovation Centre of Mondelez Australia Pty Ltd.
Introduction

Project report documents
This reference report does not include original content or analysis; rather, it consolidates material drawn from progress reports submitted by VTT Technical Research Centre of Finland throughout the research phase of the Functional and Luxury Foods Project (February to December 2015). This reference report presents VTT’s research findings for both the functional and luxury domains.

Notes for the use of this Reference Report
1. In order to preserve the context of the research processes undertaken, the sections describing the process used by the researchers to build the preliminary roadmaps and outline future pathways have been included with the results of those processes.

2. This report should be used in conjunction with the following documents:
   - Literature Review for the Functional and Luxury Food Project (VTT Technical Research Centre of Finland Ltd, October 2015)

Objectives and study design
The primary objective of this project was to provide the South Australian Government and the South Australian food industry with a roadmap outlining where food value chains may potentially be transformed to higher value add, i.e. functional and luxury foods and beverages, with an emphasis on domestic and Asian markets.

The study was undertaken in three separate phases. Phase 1 examined the market opportunities, Phase 2 investigated industrial strengths and value chains, and Phase 3 comprised a preliminary set of roadmaps for high value add food chains.

The objective of Phase 1 of the project was to complete a value chain analysis and examine the actors in the value chain, both locally and internationally, to describe the challenges and issues related to the current state of the South Australian food and beverage manufacturing industry and identify arising opportunities of interest to local manufacturers and producers.

The objective of Phase 2 was to complete a preliminary market assessment focusing on markets in 8 countries in Asia, and to undertake an assessment of current technology and technological innovation in order to identify preliminary opportunities for the South Australian functional foods and luxury industries.

In Phase 3, the objective was to outline in more detail the proposed pathways along which the South Australian food industry could move towards higher value adding, with a particular focus on Asian markets. This included detailing key assumptions for these proposed pathways and suggesting actions to be taken by the South Australian Government, the South Australian food and beverage industry and relevant stakeholders.

The proposed pathways identified in Phase 3 were refined to determine a total of six detailed pathways in the Final Report, submitted at the end of 2015. For details on the final six pathways, refer to VTT’s Final Report.)
Development of recommendations

Detailed recommendations arising from the research were developed as part of the final reporting process. These recommendations are documented in VTT’s Final Report for the Functional and Luxury Foods Project (available on the PIRSA website in July 2016).
Definitions

**Business size**

For the purposes of this study, VTT has defined "micro businesses" as those with fewer than 10 employees; and "small businesses" as those with fewer than 50 employees.

**Absorptive capacity**

Absorptive capacity is the ability of a company to recognise the value of new, external information, assimilate it, and apply it to commercial ends to adapt new technologies (Cohen & Levithal, 1990).

**Functional foods**

There is no universally agreed definition of functional foods. Commonly used definitions are related to health promoting and benefitting products, and ‘free-from’ products. In this study VTT uses a definition that refers to any food which has the additional function of promoting health and/or preventing diseases by the addition of new ingredients or the removal of harmful components (Bech-Larsen & Grunert, 2003).

**Luxury foods**

The term 'luxury food' is also subject to interpretation. As noted in the Literature Review document associated with this study, it is common to use the terms ‘premium’ and ‘luxury’ interchangeably as representing any products at the prestige end of a brand scale. However, for the purposes of this project, VTT defines luxury foods as categories of food that are scarce and rare to source, are painstakingly prepared with care, of consistently high quality, often endorsed by the high-end clientele and restaurants in different geographies, follow cultural cues, purchasing power parity, tastes, habits and historical evolution of people of a particular country that are linked to wellness, indulgence, ethnicity and high perceived value (Som & Blanckaert, 2015).

In South Australia, it is appropriate to use a broad interpretation of the high-end food market, including categories such as premium, super-premium and luxury. It is also important not to have too strict definitions and borders for such food groups since, ultimately, the goal of the industry and the Government is to see all those categories grow, and in some cases products that are not defined as luxury may have the ability to be so in the future.

**The Internet of Things**

The Internet of Things refers to the seamless dataflow between networks and devices, as defined by the Internet of Things Council (http://www.theinternetofthings.eu/what-is-the-internet-of-things, accessed June 2016). VTT describes The Internet of Things as the ability to connect remote or mobile machines to networks through advanced wireless connectivity and low-cost sensors.

**Megatrends**

Megatrends are large, social, economic, political, environmental or technological changes and macro-economic forces of development that impact business, economy, society, cultures and personal lives.

**Prosumerism**

Prosumerism refers to the phenomenon that today’s consumer is no longer a ‘passive market’ but instead can become involved in the design and manufacture of products, so the products could be made to individual specification.
**Value adding**

Value adding refers to the enhancements to products or services offered by a business prior to being made available to customers. Value adding is used to make a product more desirable for the consumer such as adding things to it, packaging it in different form, as well as capturing a premium or luxury price for a product. It is also related to competitiveness by differentiating a product from a competitor’s products, or adding services around the product.
Methodology

Phase 1: Value chain analysis

With a focus on functional and luxury foods and export activities (especially to Asia), the first phase of the project comprised a value chain analysis and industry mapping process to gain an understanding of the current South Australian food and beverage industry.

As a part of this first Phase, 65 South Australian food companies were interviewed. VTT assured the companies of confidentiality, and references to individual enterprises or persons were excluded in all project reporting. Due to a lack of other inputs, companies for interview were recommended by the Department of Primary Industries and Regions SA (PIRSA), and were chosen based on their potential activities and interests in luxury and functional foods, and in Asian exports.

The framework for analysing the current companies used three layers to describe the key functions of each company in the context of industry drivers. The first layer comprised the core functions that gather the most elemental issues for a company: raw materials and resources, key products and customers, skills and human capital and finances. The second layer in the framework referred to the transformation functions that assess the capacity of the company to transform and renew. The third layer of the framework considered context functions, and consisted of drivers in the operational environment at the local, national and global levels.

Interviews were semi-structured and lasted approximately 60-90 minutes. The process provided information related to the competitiveness of the South Australia food industry in Australian and Asian markets. The interviewees answered open-ended questions concerning:

- raw materials and resources
- key products and customers
- skills and human capital
- innovation and renewal
- value chains, networking and collaboration
- business management and future strategies
- technological capabilities
- industrial, cultural, environmental, financial, regulatory, and research and development drivers

Information related to the financial status of the companies was not systemically surveyed.

The interview data was processed utilising a value chain analysis approach and looking at the companies’ capabilities and motivations.

The VTT researchers also used two established business analysis tools, SWOT (Strengths/Weaknesses/Opportunities and Threats) and PESTLE (Political/Economic/Socio-cultural/Technological/Legal/Environmental) to assess the current state of South Australia’s functional and luxury foods industries, and the challenges related to Asian markets.

This methodology was complemented by an innovation ecosystem approach that stresses the flow of ideas, technology and people among enterprises and institutions as the key to an innovative process. In this context, innovation is not only related to the actual food innovation; rather, the emphasis is also on utilising the innovation ecosystem approach within the value chain thinking.
The South Australian Government has called for the development of a world-class framework for innovation\(^1\); the approaches of innovation research are utilised throughout this analysis.

**Phase 2: Preliminary market and technology assessment**

Phase 2 of the project comprised a preliminary market assessment, concentrating on markets in Asia (a more detailed analysis followed later in the project), a technology assessment looking at interesting new food technologies and innovations, and early drafts of strategic roadmaps for South Australian luxury and functional food industries.

For the purpose of this research project, the market analysis determined the attractiveness of a market and presented its evolving opportunities. The market assessment covered markets for specific foods in specific countries determined in the Literature Review. The information was gathered through primary interviews with relevant stakeholders in the luxury food value chains in these countries, including food importers and distributors, food retailers, restaurant and hotel executive chefs and food journalists.

The market analyses undertaken for both luxury food and functional food identified and covered the markets in **China (including Hong Kong), India, Indonesia, Japan, Korea, Malaysia and Singapore**. Details about market drivers, trends and restraints, and estimates of market size and growth (until 2020) in both luxury and functional domains have been included. These comprehensive market analyses were undertaken by Frost & Sullivan (Australia) Pty Ltd. Due to their size, these reports have not been physically included in the body of this Reference Report.

The technology assessment consisted of a future-oriented study of new and interesting food technologies and their implications. Information for this assessment was gathered through a desktop study and through interviews with VTT’s food technology experts. The assessment describes commercially-ready or near commercially-ready technologies and capabilities that can move the food industry towards higher value added business activities.

The Technology Readiness Level (TRL) method was used for evaluating the maturity of technology for operational deployment. The selected technologies represent techniques that show growth potential and open up new possibilities in the future (NOTE: the selection is not all-inclusive because there is no need to assess all well-established traditional food technologies). This assessment concentrated on technologies that have direct links to food and beverages.

However, behavioural science, psychology, behavioural economies and neuroscience also contribute in advancing both luxury and functional food.

This phase of the project also included a roadmapping component. The roadmapping process is a collaborative and iterative process that is achieved through data analysis and expert workshops. NOTE: to provide context, the full explanation of the roadmapping process is explained in conjunction with the description of the preliminary roadmaps (refer ‘Roadmaps for the South Australian Food Industry’ section in this report).

VTT’s roadmapping methodology included collaborative workshops comprising South Australian customer experts as well as VTT experts. The preliminary roadmaps developed during Phase 2 of the project included roadmaps for luxury and functional food, which were then tested in a workshop.

\(^1\) See for example the Minister for Science and Information Economy report related to the Commercialisation of Publicly Funded Research in SA, 2014.
together with various experts. Industry views were collected by interview, with the workshop further enriching industry input.

Business-related knowledge providers include companies from food, beverage, wine and food ingredient industries, the packaging industry, and from specialised knowledge-intensive service providers. In addition, information from industry organisations, government representatives, researchers from universities and research institutes as well as technology organisations was also collected as part of this project phase.

Phase 3: Development of future pathways
For Phase 3 of the project, five ‘future pathways’ were developed. The term ‘future pathways’ was used to conceptualise a series of suggested activities that the South Australian food industry, together with South Australian government and other stakeholders, could take in order to transform the industry towards higher value add businesses. To ensure preservation of the context of this component of the study, more detail on the development of pathways group work is described in the ‘Pathways for Future Growth’ section of this report.

These five pathways respond to business opportunities identified in the earlier phases of the project in the domains of functional foods and luxury foods (including wine and beverages) in Asian and Australian markets. The pathways are logical combinations of steps which aim towards a set vision.

An industry workshop was organised in September 2015 in Adelaide to discuss the suggested future pathways and elaborate visions and associated steps to be taken towards the targets in the short, medium and long term. The workshop also aimed at creating joint commitment towards reaching the industry visions and momentum for realising the policy goals.

Participants in the workshop were presented with five suggested pathways. Each group was requested to discuss the selected pathway and, if needed, to refocus it. They were also asked to devise a long-term vision for the pathway, and to consider how the pathway might transform the food and wine industry. Finally, participants were asked to identify steps to be taken to realise their long-term vision and to organise those steps on a timeline, including identifying local actors that could undertake activities along the timeline, and support the overall long-term vision for the pathway.

The complete set of pathways has been designed to provide a comprehensive outline of actions which, in total, have the potential to move the South Australian food industry towards growth and a higher level of value generation through product differentiation and entry to new markets. The final pathways and steps leading to realisation were presented in the Final Report.
Survey Participants

Approximately 120 South Australian companies with functional and luxury foods potential were considered for this research project. Most of these companies are food and beverage manufacturers, but the interview list for Phase 1 also included selected packaging companies, service companies and industry associations of relevance to the food industry. (Note: Food South Australia was not interviewed in the first round of interviews.)

The final list of companies that agreed to be interviewed in Phase 1 represented each of the food sectors in South Australia, and included actors from all relevant food and beverage categories (see Table 1).

Out of the 65 actors that were ultimately interviewed, 53 are food, wine and beverage companies (Table 1). Note that, essentially at present in the South Australian food industry, functional food is effectively a sub-category of healthy food (see Definitions above, and Industry Analysis), and for this reason in Table 1 these companies are shown as having a ‘health promoting focus’ instead of, more specifically, a functional food focus.

Table 1. Companies interviewed for survey by type.

**NOTE:** The ‘other focus’ column in this table refers to additional informants that were identified as interesting stakeholders within the food industry – their representation in the interview material is indicative and not comprehensive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Industry area and focus</th>
<th>Luxury and premium focus</th>
<th>Health promoting focus</th>
<th>Other focus</th>
<th>Interviewed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DAIRY INCLUDING CHEESE</td>
<td>4 companies</td>
<td>3 companies</td>
<td>1 association</td>
<td>6 companies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GRAINS INCLUDING BEER</td>
<td>9 companies</td>
<td>6 companies</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>8 companies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HORTICULTURE</td>
<td>12 companies</td>
<td>8 companies</td>
<td>1 cosmetics company</td>
<td>12 companies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MEAT (RED, WHITE &amp; SMALLGOODS</td>
<td>10 companies</td>
<td>3 companies</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>5 companies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SEAFOOD</td>
<td>16 companies</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>5 companies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WINE INCLUDING SPIRITS</td>
<td>12 companies</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1 association</td>
<td>7 companies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OTHER FOOD MANUFACTURING AND SUPPORTING ACTORS</td>
<td>14 companies (e.g. cakes, pastries, chocolate, sauces)</td>
<td>6 companies</td>
<td>1 luxury importer, 2 business service companies</td>
<td>16 companies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PACKAGING</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>9 packaging industry companies</td>
<td>6 companies</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Industry Environment

Phase 1 of the study examined value chains in the food industry and in South Australia specifically. This phase of the research also included a PESTLE analysis and SWOT analysis of the South Australian food industry ecosystem. These findings, together with responses from the food businesses surveyed in the study, were used to compile a picture of the current state of the industry and the opportunities for development of the functional and luxury food domains. The results are shown here for both market segments together, as many of the factors under consideration, such as automation and technology, are relevant to both.

The South Australian food industry

In accessing IBIS World reports, Estrada-Flores (2015) highlights that there are 1,499 South Australian food, wine and beverage manufacturing companies in South Australia. VTT estimates that of these, less than 10% have a current focus on functional or luxury foods and beverages.

The majority of South Australian food manufacturers and producers – and similarly more than 90% of interviewed actors in Phase 1 – are micro and small to medium sized enterprises, often owner-operated and family owned.

Primary Industries and Regions SA (PIRSA) has already conducted several value chain studies within the local key industries, such as lamb (2013), citrus (2011b), tuna (2012a), potatoes (2012b), and wine (2014; Fearne, 2009). The approach and methodology used for VTT’s study builds on these pieces of work with a focus on functional and luxury foods and Asian export markets.

PIRSA’s earlier studies examined a wide range of issues related to South Australian food value chains, such as changes in farming conditions, markets and productivity, a number of consumer trends that impact and influence how households are buying their food, and different scenarios for value adding (see e.g. the SA Lamb Value Chain, PIRSA 2013a). PIRSA has also systemically facilitated awareness-raising and adoption of the concepts and practises of value chain management within South Australia (PIRSA, 2011c).

The South Australian food and wine industry is a significant contributor to the State's economy, contributing around $10.2 billion in revenue and employing almost one in five, or 18% of the state’s employed workforce (Food and Wine ScoreCard, 2013–14, PIRSA, 2014b). Government development agencies and South Australia’s key industry organisation, Food South Australia, have produced a number of reports assessing the status and future potential of the South Australian food industry. The main messages from these reports are that the industry is growing fast, and it is widely acknowledged as an important value creator in the South Australian economy (e.g. Estrada-Flores, 2015; Estrada-Flores & Bethell, 2014).

The key food industry types in South Australia are shown below (Estrada-Flores, 2015). Industries naturally differ in size and value; the biggest sectors include wine, meat, poultry and artisanal bakery (which are the largest employers and have the biggest revenues (see Estrada-Flores, 2015).

---

2 IBIS World for ANZIC industry codes: 1111, 1112, 1113, 1120, 1131, 1133, 1140, 1150, 1161, 1162, 1171, 1172, 1173, 1181, 1182, 1199, 1211, and 1214; mid-2014 reports.
Table 2: Key food industries in South Australia.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Industry</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Artisanal Bakery:</td>
<td>Businesses in this industry bake and sell bread and other baked products from the same premises. This industry does not include bread and other baked products prebaked in factories.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beer Manufacturing:</td>
<td>The industry consists of firms that manufacture, keg, bottle and can beer, in a range of varieties such as ale, stout and porter. Beers are packaged for sale to pubs, bars, hotels and wholesale and retail alcoholic beverage distributors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Biscuit Manufacturing:</td>
<td>The industry consists of establishments that manufacture biscuits (including unleavened bread). The term biscuit refers to any kind of shortened bread that has been leavened with soda or baking powder and is formed into cakes. It bakes hard and can be of many varieties including sweet, savoury or fancy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bread Production:</td>
<td>This industry consists of establishments mainly engaged in the production of leavened and unleavened bread from factory based premises. Companies that produce bread dough (both, fresh and frozen), breadcrumbs, or baking bread from home are also included in this industry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Butter and Dairy Product Manufacturing:</td>
<td>Companies in this industry primarily manufacture dairy products other than cheese, ice cream, milk and milk powder. Industry products include butter, yoghurt, condensed milk, evaporated milk and other dairy products.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cake and Pastry Manufacturing:</td>
<td>This industry consists of companies engaged in the manufacturing of cakes, pastries and similar bakery products (including frozen products) from either a factory based premises or home. It does not include those companies that produce and sell their products direct to consumers on the same premises, such retail bakeries and supermarket in-store bakeries.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cereal, Pasta and Baking Mix Manufacturing:</td>
<td>The industry consists of establishments that manufacture prepared cereal breakfast foods, fresh and dried pasta and prepared baking mixes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cheese Manufacturing:</td>
<td>This industry includes fresh cheese, ripened cheese, hard and semi-hard cheese, and processed cheese manufacturing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chocolate and Confectionery Manufacturing:</td>
<td>Establishments in this industry primarily manufacture confectionery, chocolate or cocoa products, with or without sugar. Chocolate is produced from roasted ground cacao beans that are combined with other ingredients like milk and sugar. Cocoa is a powder produced from cocoa seeds that have been roasted, shelled and ground. Sugar confectionery is produced by boiling, crystallising and moulding sugar or molasses into solid pieces that are usually coloured or flavoured.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cooking Oil and Margarine Manufacturing:</td>
<td>Companies in this industry manufacture crude vegetable or marine oils, as well as cake or meal. Companies in the industry also refine oil and blend oil and fats to produce food items such as margarine, compound cooking oils or fats, and blended table or salad/olive oils.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cured Meat and Smallgoods Manufacturing:</td>
<td>This industry includes firms that primarily manufacture bacon, ham (including canned bacon or ham), smallgoods, and other prepared meat products. Smallgoods is a term usually referring to meat products where the meat has been manufactured to form a new product, such as sausages, salamis, pates, and dried, roasted and preserved meat products. Smallgoods are made from pig meat and other meats, such as poultry and beef.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flour and Grain Mill Product Manufacturing:</td>
<td>Companies in this industry manufacture mill flour or meal intended for human consumption from grains, vegetables or plants. The industry excludes the production of breakfast grains.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fruit and Vegetable Processing:</td>
<td>This industry consists of companies that bottle, can, preserve, quick-freeze and quick-dry fruit and vegetables (excluding sun-dried products). It includes dehydrated vegetable products, soups, sauces, pickles and mixed meat and vegetable and cereal products. The industry also includes firms that process fruit and vegetables.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fruit Juice Drink Manufacturing:</td>
<td>Firms in this industry produce and bottle a wide range of still beverages, including fruit juice, fruit drink, cordials, iced tea and flavoured water.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ice Cream Manufacturing:</td>
<td>This industry consists of establishments that manufacture ice cream, gelato, sorbet or frozen confectionery.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meat Processing:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The industry consists of businesses mainly engaged in slaughtering livestock (except poultry); boning, freezing, preserving or packing red meat; canning meat (except poultry, bacon, ham or corned meat); manufacturing meals from abattoir by-products (except from products of poultry slaughtering); or rendering lard or tallow. The industry excludes beef feedlot operations.

### Milk and Cream Processing:
The industry primarily pasteurises and separates raw milk to produce milk and cream products with varying fat content levels. The industry excludes the manufacture of cultured buttermilk, flavoured milk (whole and skim), sour cream and yoghurt.

### Milk Powder Manufacturing:
Businesses in this industry manufacture milk powder, powdered milk-based beverages and baby foods in powder form.

### Poultry Processing:
Companies in this industry process live poultry (including chickens, ducks and turkeys) into cuts and value added products. This industry begins where live poultry is purchased for processing (usually aged between five and eight weeks) and includes abattoir operation, dressing, frozen poultry manufacturing, poultry meat manufacturing and poultry packing. The industry ends at the initial point of sale of poultry products.

### Seafood Processing:
Businesses in this industry process and manufacture fish or other seafood. This industry also includes businesses that operate vessels that process, but do not catch, fish or other seafood. This industry does not include fishing vessels that both catch and process fish or other seafood. This industry also does not include firms that freeze whole finfish or shell, freeze, or bottle oysters in brine; these are included in the Fish Wholesaling industry.

### Snack Food Manufacturing:
Companies in this industry mainly manufacture snack-food products such as potato chips, corn chips, savoury snacks, nuts, pretzels and other similar snacks. The manufacturing process includes buying raw materials such as milled corn, wheat, potatoes, food extracts, flavourings, preservatives and sugar, for processing into finished, consumer snack foods. The finished products are then packaged and marketed to wholesalers and retailers.

### Soft Drink Manufacturing:
This industry produces, cans or bottles soft drinks (carbonated and non-carbonated), sparkling mineral water, sport drinks and energy drinks. The industry does not include the production of bottled water, fruit juice or fruit drinks.

### Spirit Manufacturing:
This industry purchases ingredients such as grapes, sugar and malt, which are fermented and distilled to produce spirit beverages including vodka, gin, whisky and liqueurs; industry participants also blend spirits. Operators buy glass bottles and paperboard containers to package these products. The spirits are then sold to alcoholic drink wholesalers and retailers. While the industry makes fortified spirits, it does not produce fortified wines.

### Tea, Coffee and Other Food Manufacturing (also known as “Other manufacturing”):
This industry segment includes manufacturing of food products not elsewhere classified, including coffee, tea, sauces, dressings, seasonings, flavourings, herbs, spices, yeast, yeast extracts, ice, honey, salt and prepared meals. Manufacturers in this industry procure raw materials and process them into various finished products that are subsequently sold to wholesalers, retailers and related food manufacturers.

Value Chain Analysis

For the purposes of Phase 1 of this study, the researchers used the value chain approach adopted by the Economic Development Board of South Australia (2015) and the key elements of the value chain map include:

- **The value or supply chain stages** – an overview of the broad linear chain of production
- **The main actors** – mapping the major players in each stage of the value chain
- **Goods produced and services provided** – the outcomes or services provided at each stage of the production chain
- **Processes and activities undertaken** – the major processes and activities required to produce the goods or services
- **Support services across the chain** – activities required across all stages of the value chain, but not produced as a direct result of the chain.

The main actors in the value chain or value network (see e.g. Christensen, 1997) include primary production, food processing and different third parties such as trade agents, distributors and various service providers.

The actors are connected by interactions that represent tangible and intangible deliverables that create value. Value chains and networks also emphasise interdependence between the actors. In value chains, competitiveness is driven out of creating value delivered through collaborative relationships as well as through either cost reduction or production efficiency.

It is important to remember that, although the value chain is depicted as a vertical chain, intra-chain linkages are most often of a two-way nature (Kaplinsky & Morris, 2002). For example, the analysed food manufacturers are influenced by the constraints both in the upstream and in the downstream links in the chain.

The value chain can have several other stages and side chains such as waste material and side-stream management and value creation related to them, but these were not the focus of the interviews and data collection and are therefore not included in the analysis. However, these side chains are important when considering the further development of the food and beverage industry.

Phase 1 of the study assessed the food industry as a whole, but it should be noted that PIRSA has conducted studies concerning different food and beverage segments in which the value chains are differentiated following the individual elements of the segments. An example of this is the value chain analysis of the wine industry and its value chain, as can be seen in Figure 1.
The value chain analysis for this project started with a portrayal of the food value chain. Figures 2, 3 and 4 below are simplified portrayals of value chains. In the real world, naturally, value chains are often more complex than this and there are more links and alternative actors and directions in the chains.

**The food value chain without third parties**

In VTT’s analysis, the value chain figures include all the main actors of the food value chain, but the analytical focus is on food companies, which were the main respondents of the interviews.

Figure 2 (above) portrays the food value chain at its simplest form. Approximately 80% of the SMEs interviewed would prefer this kind of value chain where possible. This simplified value chain does not include third parties such as trade agents or distributors. Instead, in this kind of value chain food companies buy the raw materials directly from growers – and often are partly growers and farmers themselves - and they sell their products directly to retail and food service. Sometimes they also sell small amounts directly to consumers via hospitality venues, online stores and farmers’ markets.

This kind of short and partly vertically integrated value chain is straightforward and relies heavily on companies’ own networks and relationships. Micro businesses (fewer than 10 employees) and small...
businesses (fewer than 50 employees) find the short value chain without third parties to be the most suitable for them.

Companies – both big and small – like to have direct contacts, especially with farms that produce their raw materials. This way, they can have control over the value chain and the quality of their raw materials.

On the other hand, larger companies may aim for full vertical control over the value chain, when more sophisticated and collaborative business practices are needed. Using distributors in sales is more common – locally direct connections are sought after, but nationally, and especially in exports, the good distribution networks are the most critical stage in the value chain. The global shift towards vertically integrated chains – in which the company owns its upstream suppliers and its downstream buyers – in international markets has further increased the competition on control and on final customers.

The food value chain with third parties

Figure 3. The food value chain with third parties.

Figure 3 presents the food value chain where third parties are included. In this model for example, food companies utilise trade agents and wholesale distributors in order to obtain raw materials and to move their products to retail and food service sectors. It was clear from the interviews that in this kind of value chain the most critical stage is between the food companies and the destination markets.

Within the local end markets in South Australia, and with company owned or otherwise easily accessed transport services, it is optimal to sell directly to retailers, such as supermarkets, and to food service, such as restaurants. However, when moving further to national or to international markets, the role of distributors and distribution networks becomes more critical.

Especially in specialised functional and luxury markets, local knowledge about products and the markets, and well-established networks of foreign distributors, are needed. Many interview participants already exporting emphasised the long-term (more than 10 years) work they have done in order to establish the overseas distributor connections and market access points.

The South Australian food industry value chain

Figure 5 presents the overall picture of the studied value chain and its components for South Australia. It includes the stages and actors in the value chain, examples of goods and services produced, and support services across the value chain.

The first stage consists of primary production; the most important actors being farms, of which South Australia has approximately 13,000 (ABARES, Australian Bureau of Agricultural and Resource Economics and Sciences, 2015). The types of farms are shown below in Table 3, and the value of production in Table 4.
Naturally, the majority of primary production/raw ingredients are in the commodity category of food, which is outside the scope of this research project. Potato is a good example of a commodity product in which price is the key driver for purchase for consumers (see PIRSA, 2012b).
Figure 4. South Australian Food Value Chain (mapping template adapted from Economic Development Board South Australia, 2015).
Table 3. Type and number of farms, by industry classification, 2012–13.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Industry Classification</th>
<th>South Australia</th>
<th></th>
<th>Australia</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>no.</td>
<td>%</td>
<td>no.</td>
<td>%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fruit and nuts</td>
<td>2 332</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>10 136</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mixed grains and livestock</td>
<td>2 253</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>11 558</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grain growing</td>
<td>2 136</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>11 595</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sheep</td>
<td>1 626</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>11 938</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beef Cattle</td>
<td>1 336</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>39 380</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mixed livestock</td>
<td>615</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6 434</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vegetable</td>
<td>469</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3 980</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dairy</td>
<td>366</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>7 612</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other livestock</td>
<td>316</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4 123</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nurseries, Cut Flowers and Turf</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1 558</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poultry</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1 031</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other</td>
<td>1 339</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>17 817</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Agriculture</td>
<td>13 025</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>128 682</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: Estimated value of agricultural operations greater than $5000. Source: ABARES, 2015.


Together with farms, fisheries are a key segment in the primary production stage. In 2012–2013, South Australia contributed 19% of the total value of Australian fisheries production; the main luxury and premium products being Southern rock lobster and abalone.
The main export products include tuna, prawns, Southern rock lobster and abalone. Japan and Hong Kong are the major destinations for South Australian fisheries exports, accounting for 57% and 23% of the total value of exports in 2012–13, respectively. Other major export destinations include Vietnam (13%) and China (2%) (ABARES, 2015).

In addition to farms and fisheries, some food companies source unique raw materials such as kangaroo meat and other game meat from processors.

In the value chain, according to the interviews, approximately 80% of raw materials come from local South Australian sources, and 10–15% from elsewhere in Australia.

International supply of raw materials is generally quite small (approximately 5–10%). Supplying from overseas is heavily influenced by the global market volatility. The global supply is affected by availability of arable land and by the ongoing effects of climate change, which has reduced the reliance on production for a number of major producers and exporters (see the SA Food Strategy 2010–2015). As markets sustain variable economic conditions, volatility will be an ongoing challenge. In addition, global changes are mostly beyond the influence of the South Australian food industry. Related to this, greater market intelligence and risk management are required in order to grow.

Packaging is also assessed within the raw materials stage, but the situation and challenges related to packaging are presented separately as a part of the researchers' SWOT analysis.

The second stage along the value chain includes trading from the farms to the food companies. As noted, food companies interviewed prefer having direct contact with the farms that produce their raw materials, and third party traders are often not favoured at this stage of the value chain.

In the middle of the value chain, we have the actual food companies. Food and beverage companies are the main actors undertaking the value adding activities in the value chain. In practice, value adding examples include production processes such as marinating meats, making small goods, condiments and jams, special packaging, or anything that gives the product greater perceived value.

The other element of value adding is to the service offered around the product, such as in hospitality and tourism (for example the Eat Local SA initiative). This added value around food and beverages consists of elements of customer service and the experience of the product that is created in seeing, smelling, touching and understanding where the food comes from and then experiencing the eating or drinking of it (Regional Development Australia, 2014).

The food companies also package the products, usually by themselves with a packaging material sourced partly locally and partly nationally and internationally.

The fourth and fifth stages of the value chain include wholesale and distribution from the food companies to domestic and international use through retail and food service. Wholesalers and distributors are optional actors in the value chain; however, for larger and export-oriented companies they are generally critical. Established companies have developed strong relationships with key importers in target countries. These importers facilitate business on behalf of the South Australian companies (see e.g. PIRSA, 2011b), and for example can have sub-contracted distributors and transportation, which add more actors to the value chain.

At the end of the value chain are the consumers. Retailers and food service are constantly responding to consumer trends which are influenced by changing household demographics, lifestyle preferences, personal aspirations and technology. All these consumer trends in turn affect the food manufacturers. Generally the Australian food market is highly competitive (see e.g. a FOODmap
analysis by the Department of Agriculture, Fisheries and Forestry, DAFF, 2012) indicating an abundance of products, and a competitive market.

At the bottom of Figure 5 are different supporting services that go across the value chain. These include, for example, basic energy and water suppliers, machinery and equipment providers and different knowledge providers and cooperation platforms such as Food South Australia, the South Australian Wine Industry Association (SAWIA), Primary Producers South Australia (PPSA), and other intermediary organisations.

Research organisations and universities also provide new knowledge, but among the small and medium size food companies interviewed, collaboration between industry and research organisations is quite rare, and would require more work in order to act as a successful innovation driver.

Currently, PIRSA is addressing this challenge through the Advanced Food Manufacturing (AFM) grants that encourage businesses to collaborate with researchers in developing new products. Ten new grants were awarded in June 2015. The limited interest in research and development among South Australian food processors and manufacturers is addressed later in the SWOT analysis included in this report.

Other local organisations, such as technology centres, enterprise incubators, and development companies, whose primary tasks are to facilitate the transfer and commercialisation of technology, could provide more help in the development of innovation networks (e.g. Koskenlinna et al., 2005).

Successful industry-research collaboration requires a variety of actions that have been studied on several occasions. For example, a report prepared for the Minister for Science and Information Economy of the State Government of South Australia by LeMessurier Solutions (2014) calls for, amongst other things, an increased awareness of South Australian research capability and engagement with industry, for creating a “researcher mapping and matching system”, for increasing support for engagement and collaboration activities in South Australian research institutes, for increasing SME and researcher access to “soft skills” to improve collaboration and upskill commercialisation capability, and for providing innovation training for first time collaborators.

Macro level factors affecting the industry

In Phase 1 of the study, macro level factors affecting the industry were analysed using PESTLE (Political, Economic, Socio-cultural, Technical, Legal and Environment) and SWOT (Strengths, Weaknesses, Opportunities and Threats) analysis tools. A number of the issues identified in the PESTLE analysis as relevant to South Australia also apply to Australia in general (PESTLE summary, Table 5 below).

Challenges identified in these analyses were used as discussion starters with interview participants. The challenges are categorised below based on the framework of core functions, transformation functions and context functions.
Table 5. PESTLE analysis: Summary of local factors affecting the industry.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PESTLE Analysis</th>
<th>Political</th>
<th>Economic</th>
<th>Socio-cultural</th>
<th>Technical</th>
<th>Legal</th>
<th>Environmental</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Luxury</td>
<td>Stable government with an increasing interest in advanced manufacturing, agriculture and food and wine lays a good basis for the development of luxury industries. Exporting premium wine and food is one of the economic priorities of the government.</td>
<td>Similarly to most Western economies, the SA economy is service driven. Economic growth is somewhat dependent on mining and agriculture sectors. The financial system is generally stable and quite strong, but the economic growth has lagged a little behind the rest Australia. Markets are open, with no notable restrictions. Notable taxes affecting the industry are GST and WET (Wine Equalisation Tax). Industries are sensitive to the movement in exchange rate. There are challenges related to high-cost environment. The local South Australian market and the Australian national market are competitive and quite saturated: this affects growth rate and creation of new sales. Some industries such as grain and wine are also in overproduction. Growth in the number of premium &amp; high-quality food outlets e.g. Thomas Dux, and a growing number of high net worth individuals with the ability to buy special food.</td>
<td>The population of South Australia continues to grow. Rapidly growing ethnic populations, especially Chinese and Indians are driving demand for specific ethnic foods in Australia e.g. saffron in the luxury field. Affluent older population seeks to indulge in high end products in small amounts. Population is well-educated, and the food culture is vibrant with initiatives fostering local food (e.g. Eat Local SA). Much enhanced interest in gourmet cuisine in Australia as a result of popular TV shows. Significant increase in expenditure on eating out, which is growing at double the rate of general retail expenditure. Diversity of population and multi-cultural society. Possibilities to target specific populations. Growing aging population and increasing incidence of chronic diseases driving interest in functional foods. Increasing interest in nutritional–biological values of food, and increasing knowledge on functional food transmitted for</td>
<td>High focus on top-quality products that do not require much technological investments. The companies have usually automated their processes where suitable and feasible, and do not have many technology-related issues in the operation. Demand for luxury products with a premium story and high end retail options drive the luxury food industry development. Small local functional food industry looking at imports. Natural functionality and naturally healthy food are of high interest, but interest in technology is also growing. E.g. high-protein and gluten-free products are currently popular. Food technology and business experts are available (e.g. SARDI, CSIRO); advancements achieved by food technologists include the development of products such as UHT milk, longer</td>
<td>No major regulatory guidelines related to luxury food industries. Quite flexible business laws. Some expansions of regulation have increased compliance and food costs (e.g. related to trade waste). Consumers are more and more concerned about labelling information and food production attributes such as traceability (Country-of-Origin), No Growth Hormones Used, Free Range and Animals Treated Humanely and Environmentally-friendly. The food industry also emphasises a need for more clear certifications, standards and labelling, for example in terms of clean and sustainable food and organic products. IPR knowledge and support is needed to overcome trade barriers related to technical regulations, standards and conformity assessment procedures and labelling rules overseas. Functional food is regulated nationally by two main bodies – FSANZ and TGA.</td>
<td>Water scarcity affects food and beverage industries. The industry is widely dependent on natural resources and energy. Environmental and climate issues are important and Australians are investing in replacing fossil energy by renewable fuels such as solar, wind and marine. Via regulation (e.g. water restrictions), all industries have had pressures to adapt and mitigate in the hope of alleviating or managing climate change ‘Clean and green’ standards are well represented.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
PESTLE Analysis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Political</th>
<th>Economic</th>
<th>Socio-cultural</th>
<th>Technical</th>
<th>Legal</th>
<th>Environmental</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Free Trade Agreements with Japan, Korea and China improve market access for SA companies.</td>
<td>example by the media. Functional foods are traditionally regarded more therapeutic (drug based) than food based, but this can change.</td>
<td>shelf life, and Cryovac packaging. Entrepreneurs have indicated interest in technological innovation and knowledge related to it.</td>
<td>Regulations currently restrict the use of claims on food to nutrient content and health maintenance claims. Claims regarding prevention or reduction of disease risk are currently prohibited (with one exception about folate) though in spite of this health claims are present on labels, in advertising and the internet.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some companies believe that they operate both in the functional and the luxury domains, meaning their products may have both functional and luxury features. Only a few companies manufacture purely luxury products and none exclusively manufacture functional foods. Most of the selected companies classified their products as premium quality, and terms such as premium, luxury and fine foods are used quite broadly (see also Definitions, above).

However, among the interviewed companies, luxury and functional foods are widely recognised as interesting, but challenging, forms of value adding.

The status quo of the industry is quite strong (see Context, above) and the interviews revealed lots of strengths to build upon. However, the analysis of interviews identifies a number of challenges and limitations, outlined in the SWOT analysis, presented below (Table 6).

Company performance ranked against global competition

The interviewed companies were assessed by the experts of the project, based on the assessment framework of different functions. This assessment includes the actual food, wine and beverage businesses and excludes other interviewees such as industry associations, packaging companies and business service actors.

Figure 5 maps the company development level against global competition. The companies are categorized as follows:

1. **Companies capable of performing at the level of global competition** (10 companies)

These companies have established exports and international presence in the food and beverage market. They usually export at least 20% of their products, but some companies export even 90-100% of their products. They have ambitious growth plans (for example doubling or tripling the size of their operations in the coming 3–5 years) and strong visions; they are willing to take risks and invest continuously in research and development and innovation (R&D&I). They are globally networked and can act as innovation champions in their field.

2. **Companies capable of performing well in some functions, but overall could do better when compared to the level of global competition** (35 companies)
These companies perform well in their current state and they are interested in growing and moving towards exports. They have experience with smaller scale export activities (less than 20% of production goes to export) and look for new opportunities. They can improve their capabilities especially related to new technology and food innovation and to market and export intelligence. They benefit most from the experienced mentoring network, and from the new collaboration initiatives and support. They are more cautious in their product development, but demonstrate interest in new ways of value adding.

3. **Companies that have capability limitations or dysfunctions when compared to the level of global competition** (8 companies).

These companies represent stagnant and diminishing companies. Reasons for the stagnation vary: for example, some of these companies are sunset enterprises planning to finish their business, some are struggling to survive. However, a company in this category may also just be satisfied with their current status and merely choosing to stay put. These companies present only a little development potential and no interest towards growing or exporting. They are mostly interested in acute, short term concerns related to their business.

*Figure 5. Company performance ranked against global competition.*

As seen from Figure 5, most of the companies (66%) represent category 2. We argue that these companies form the basis for the development of South Australian luxury and functional food and beverage industry.

Even if the current selection of luxury and functional products offered is limited, these companies perform well in providing premium quality, well-received products for their customers (the interviewed companies receive good feedback from their customers). These enterprises can also benefit greatly from the presented innovation ecosystem approach (refer the ‘Towards An Innovative Business Ecosystem’ section of this report) and from the mentoring provided by well-seasoned exporters and luxury and functional pioneers. Recommendations related to these are presented in the VTT Final Report for this research project.
Core, transformation and context functions

The insights gained from the company assessment (see above) were used to complement the findings in this section of the study. The 53 food, wine and beverage companies identified for interview were evaluated qualitatively against the core, transformation and context functions.

Core functions

In the interviews, a number of core functions were identified as important factors and potential constraints on development of the South Australian food industry.

The availability of a quality workforce

Many companies interviewed emphasised the importance of a high quality workforce for their business, and difficulties in finding and maintaining the best possible staff. Availability of a skilled workforce has been recognised as a highly important issue and a limiting factor for the food industry already in the SA Food Plan 2007–2010, but the challenge still remains today. Skills shortages were also a common theme identified in the Australian Government’s Department of Industry, RDAR and PIRSA report Mapping Capabilities and Connections in Riverland, SA (2015). Particular types of skills are anticipated to become increasingly scarce in the future, and many of these disappearing skills are essential for plant design, repair, maintenance and management. Team management and business management were also strongly identified as skills shortages.

Access to a high quality workforce is a challenge, especially for bigger companies and companies located in more distant areas of South Australia. In summary, human resources are one of the greatest problems of the food industry in South Australia at every level, from technical staff and seasonal workers to specialists. Some companies mentioned that there are huge gaps in finding suitable employees who understand and are genuinely interested in the food business. These, and other human resource related issues, have also resulted in the situation where food companies are reluctant to hire more staff. Also the generational changes can cause problems if the aging family business owners cannot find successors for their work.

The current state of local packaging providers and materials

Availability of local packaging is a relatively weak link in the current functional and luxury value chain. Standard packages are easily available and the grand Australian packaging players are relatively healthy, but local supply for non-standard, customised packages and bottles that suit the needs of functional and luxury foods and beverages is limited.

Many companies stated that using local packaging manufacturers is not feasible, and also that the quality and design suitable for product differentiation is not good enough compared to overseas competitors. For example, for luxury wines all the bottles must be sourced from Europe, and the capacity to produce coated paperboard that is generally used for premium and luxury packaging has diminished locally.

In particular, needs related to special and custom packaging cannot be fully met by the local, or even national actors, although the food companies like to source all they can locally. Many interviewees viewed packaging as a critical part of their operation and emphasised the differences between premium and standard packaging. In addition, a major part of the current product development involves variation through packaging and bottling.

Packaging companies who were interviewed also noted the weakening situation for their industry. For example, despite some healthy packaging actors, imports of pre-converted
boxes and bags have increased by approximately 25% annually (source: market intelligence interviewee). Imports come from a variety of sources, including China.

One interpretation is that the markets are fragmented and incumbents are no longer able to meet the needs of the emerging and diverging markets. The main focus of the incumbents has been to improve the existing value chain; whilst these actors are more innovative and collaborative today than in the past, they are unable to satisfy the demands of the emerging players in the food sector.

In summary, the food industry is moving faster and is more entrepreneurial than the packaging sector. Insufficient attention is being paid for example to packaging design, which is important if moving up the value chain towards more luxury products is desired. Generally, the packaging industry needs to become less transactional and cost driven and more relationship and value focused, and the industry linkages between food and packaging need to be improved in the light of new and emerging demands of the developing food industry.

Despite these concerns related to development of the packaging industry, the Literature Review addresses opportunities related to packaging [See Functional and Luxury Food Project Literature Review]. Locally-based packaging solutions support the potential to open new trade opportunities through significantly reduced costs via enhanced packaging; for example issues such as traceability, sustainability, presentation, convenience and enhanced freshness/shelf life can be addressed through packaging.

Transformation Functions
The second component of the interviews assessed the transformation functions, that is, the companies’ ability to change and innovate.

The importance of differentiation
Differentiation in terms of added value is a well-recognised key to success among the companies interviewed. The ways to add value are somewhat traditional and limited, and, for example, the functional products available represent quite basic functionalities, such as reduced fat or added vitamins. More radical and disruptive food technology and innovation cases are very rare.

Luxury products represent around 5% of the food and beverages manufactured in South Australia, and only a few companies expressed an interest to substantially increase the range of their luxury products. Generally, the luxury category was seen to be too restrictive in terms of sales. 90% of the interviewed companies seemed to be satisfied with their current situation and position, which is to offer high-quality, premium-end products to a variety of customers.

Only 5–10% of the interviewed companies claimed to be highly selective with their customers and target markets. These cases however, represent a genuinely innovative and intelligent way of doing business; within these companies, for example, the value of stories and narratives related to the products and stand-out design is emphasised.

Differentiation is important also because Australia generally does not have the right boundary conditions to develop economies of scale, and competing with quantity is not feasible for most Australian companies, especially for manufacturing firms (see Roos, 2014). Instead, opportunities lie in low-volume, high-value adding, high-variability, medium-
high-complexity manufacturing — that is, in realising economies of scope above economies of scale. This means having business processes, technical systems, and manufacturing processes and systems that allow high variability in what is produced (Roos, 2014). This approach requires additional investments and high level of planning.

The level of automation
The level of automation within the companies interviewed is generally low to medium, with a few examples of high level of automation. Many food and beverage industries are labour-intensive and require, for example, an extensive seasonal workforce to do routine tasks. In some industries the premium and luxury value and experience also comes from the handmaking practices.

The companies interviewed have usually automated their processes where suitable and feasible, and do not have many technology-related issues in the operation. In terms of increasing volume, more automation is needed and companies looking for growth in volume wish for more funding for automation.

However, companies not interested in volume sales seem to be quite happy with their current systems and equipment. Some entrepreneurs indicated interest in technological innovation and knowledge related to it — generally there is quite a lot of room for utilising technology trends and the intelligence related to them.

In Australia in general, the food industry has invested moderately in equipment and dwellings since 2007, with capital investment growing at a rate of +1% per year in the past eight years (Estrada-Flores, 2014). Indications are that this trend will continue and attention should be paid to mechanisms that support smart and beneficial investments by the food industry.

Context Functions
The last section of the interview questions related to context functions: drivers and barriers for the industry's development.

Drivers of the industry
The interviewees gave different answers to the question of what drives the development of the industry, but together with the increased efficiency and the reduction of costs, the most prominent driver is customer needs and demands, as this was mentioned by more than 50% of the interviewees.

In the South Australian Food Strategy 2010–2015, consumer demands and their role in shaping the industry direction were similarly emphasised. Understanding customer needs both in Australia and abroad is critical in establishing a successful and competitive food industry.

Higher income, value for money (price), urbanisation, migration, demographic shifts, improved transportation, and consumer perceptions regarding quality and safety and ethical values based on production system integrity are changing food consumption patterns all over the world. Having a greater understanding of consumer needs is a part of the critical market intelligence required in order to succeed in exporting.

Similarly, community and industry groups have an impact on industry development; for example more than 90% of the businesses interviewed mentioned Food South Australia as a great asset and an impactor of the local food industry. Similarly, all of the wineries
interviewed regarded industry associations, both local and national, SAWIA and Wine Australia respectively, as assets.

Size of the local market
Both the local South Australian market and the Australian national market, where the products are sold throughout a country, are highly competitive and at some level saturated, meaning that growth is slow and there is a limited chance of new sales.

Simultaneously, many industries such as grain and wine are moving towards over-production and then slowly shrinking. The situation is further impacted by the changing dynamics in global trade; a good example is the emergence of countries such as Brazil, Russia, India and China as competitors in a number of Australia’s established markets (e.g. the South Australian Food Strategy 2010–2015).

The small size of the local market has resulted in a limited interest in product development and innovation in the functional and luxury food domains, because companies usually want to have a strong market presence in their home markets first before going overseas.

Wish for more standardised and simple certification systems and labelling
The companies interviewed emphasised a need for clearer certifications, standards and labelling, for example in terms of clean and sustainable food, and for organic products.

The Department of Agriculture has several approved organisations working with certifications and standards. For example, for organic food there are at least seven different certifying logos with varying requirements available.

Similarly with food safety, the certification system is complex and different states and territories may interpret the code in different ways and priorities; many interviewees wished for more consistent and clearer standards.

Technical regulations, standards and conformity assessment procedures, and labelling rules are often also trade barriers. Food companies need help in interpreting and fulfilling the various overseas standards in order to succeed in exporting. Food companies do not oppose the standards that protect the customer, but in the competitive global market, efficient and clear standards are advantageous. There is also increasing media and community interest in food security and standards (see PIRSA, 2011a).

In addition, non-technical trade barriers such as import tariffs and acceptance related barriers need to be addressed regularly.

Labelling
Labelling has the potential to drive consumer behavioural change, leading for example to improved dietary patterns but, in practice, labelling is often inconsistent and inconclusive.

It is widely reported that the mandatory, standardised Nutrition Information Panel used in Australia and elsewhere, and located on the side or back of packaged foods, is difficult to understand and therefore underutilised in the food choice process (Grunert and Wills, 2007; Tymms, 2011).

In response, summary-style nutrition labels that require only minimal nutritional literacy have emerged on the front of packaged food. Grunert and Wills (2007) have determined that while consumers like simplification, very basic front-of-pack information, such as
simple ‘traffic lights’ or single logos are less acceptable to consumers than those front-of-pack schemes that supply a more verifiable message.

In summary, it can be stated that consumers’ ideal front-of-pack nutrition label would be: a) easy to use, b) trustworthy and easy to verify and c) non-paternalistic, that is, it would not pressure certain behaviour. These basic rules of labelling are simple but, for example in exporting, the consumer expectations in different countries may vary a lot and ideals may be in conflict, or may be weighted differently by consumers.

**Food transparency**
An important and ongoing food regulatory trend in 2015 is food transparency. Consumers increasingly want to know where their food comes from, and governments continue to seek ways to improve their food safety systems. In Australia, a national consultation process began in April 2015 with industry, business and consumers, to deliver clearer and more consistent country of origin food labelling without imposing excessive cost on industry (Department of Industry, 2015).

**SWOT analysis**
A SWOT (Strengths, Weaknesses, Opportunities and Threats) analysis is an analytical framework used to identify and structure the food industry’s greatest challenges and its most promising opportunities. The strengths and weaknesses are internal factors that stem from the industry, and the opportunities and threats represent factors arising from the external environment.

Strengths, opportunities, weaknesses and threats were previously assessed in the South Australian Food Strategy 2010–2015 (Government of South Australia 2010); the SWOT in this report presents an updated analysis emphasising the recent industry insights from the interviews, with a focus on functional and luxury food businesses.

The strengths, opportunities, weaknesses and threats identified from the interview data are summarised in Table 6, with the most notable issues and challenges arising from the material presented. Table 6 includes a variety of different elements based on previous work and the VTT interviews.

**Strengths**
In summary, the main strengths build on the strong social capital of the South Australian food industry and on the many unique businesses, niche market players and ‘gap fillers’ with novelty value within the food industry.

In addition, the foods produced are known to be safe and of high quality due to the Australian safe food system and standards together with the existing biosecurity safeguards. Comparatively low use of antibiotics in production animals is one competitive advantage for Australian meat products (Gartry, 2014). However, the available survey data on antibiotic resistance in the animals in Australia is quite old (2003–2004), and thus might not reflect the most recent situation.

The Australian Government’s Department of Health (2015) has recently published its first national antimicrobial resistance strategy. Such strategies have resulted in continuous microbial resistance monitoring in EU countries, and it is hoped that similar results may be obtained in Australia (see e.g. DANMAP, 2014 and SVARM, 2014).

Long traditions and a quite strong business culture, with a variety of different companies and high-quality products, strengthen the core of the industry. In particular, the luxury brands of food and wines in South Australia are predominantly family owned, and customers tend to place more trust in
products which come from family companies as opposed to multinational organisations (see the Economist, 2014). An appreciated heritage and small familial structures are attributes of luxury and strength within the South Australian food industry, as described by those businesses interviewed.

There are many experienced businesses and some pioneering operations and initiatives across the state. Learning from more experienced businesses and interest in mentoring possibilities highlight the arising ecosystem thinking and benefits. Similarly, the businesses interviewed mentioned good relationships and a high level of trust among businesses, and sustainable relationships with suppliers, customers, regulators and other stakeholders as current strengths. Even if systemic collaboration is rare, there are some ‘pockets’ of collaboration and generally the companies are well networked with each other.

To make the value chains and the business ecosystem alive and renewable, a risk taking entrepreneurial culture and ‘re-cycling’ – the continuous movement of ideas and people – are essential. Trust and a commitment to the common objective between businesses in the chain are also noted in PIRSA’s previous value chain studies (e.g. 2011), however previous analyses have found that building trust between companies has not been easy, and requires more action.

Environmental issues do not excessively burden the functional and luxury foods companies interviewed. For example waste management and ‘green and clean’ standards are generally well handled and respected. Via regulation, all industries have had pressures to adapt and mitigate in the hope of alleviating or managing climate change, and with a strong dependence on natural resources and energy, the food industry has had to prepare for new ways of doing business (see e.g. water restrictions by SA Water3).

Expansion of regulation has increased compliance and food costs (especially related to trade waste), but generally the companies did not have significant problems in adapting to environmental changes and regulation. The food and beverage industry is sensitive to increased trade waste costs – this is already widely noted by the South Australian Government, and the industry is willing to work with the public sector to address the challenges.

Weaknesses
Weaknesses stem, for example, from conservative and traditional attitudes and quite slow development, with a few exceptions. Product development and transition within the industry is in many places slow and cautious. Only a small amount of genuine functional and luxury products can be found, and where they exist, the value chains are generally quite short. There may even be cultural reticence to move from premium towards luxury foods; this is mainly due to a fear of losing loyal domestic market.

An important weakness is that the size of the local customer base is too small for high value functional and luxury products, which has resulted in limited interest in product development and innovation in the functional and luxury foods domains. This weakness can be avoided by directly targeting export markets. However, it should be noted that the interest in, and capabilities related to, exports are also limited and, in addition, there are some difficulties in finding the right partners for export.

There are also challenges relating to continuous supply of raw materials to maintain a stable production level for companies operating using seasonal raw material supply and not able to import

raw material to compensate for fluctuations in availability. Growing production volumes are sometimes limited by the available volumes of raw materials.

There is also an unwillingness to prioritise investments in new machinery, automation, facilities and research and development. Both interviews and studies\(^4\) identify high costs (for example energy, water, waste and labour) as a competitive disadvantage for establishing, operating and growing food companies in South Australia.

Of the food processors and manufacturers interviewed, more than 50% stated that the current primary driver for growth is a focus on increased efficiency and the reduction in costs of production. This is one key driver for a limited interest in research and development, and as a consequence, the R&D community has focused its efforts (on attracting industry support) elsewhere. Businesses are mainly concentrated in doing what they have already done for a long time, therefore innovation through completely new functional and luxury products is currently quite rare.

Equally, it has meant that the food processors and manufacturers have, in the main, not employed staff that have the technical competency to, for example, identify their research and development needs or to be able to identify emerging technologies that could be applied within their company. This creates a vicious circle.

Another important weakness is the lack of widely accepted definitions of luxury food products. Terms such as luxury or premium are used mostly as market differentiators, and not as a systemic part of product development.

**Opportunities**

Opportunities identified include, for example, collaboration opportunities in exports and in improving the readiness to enter Asian markets. Utilisation of the specialities and resources of the region can be both improved and increased.

An unexploited opportunity is related to increasing the amount of research and development, product development, and technology when feasible. Spreading and utilising the existing knowledge within the value network would further increase the critical market intelligence within the industry.

Opportunities also lie in increasing understanding of the diverse range of customers and potential customers (needs, habits, culture, etc.), in providing help for partnership building, and in establishing international connections (e.g. international boards and visits). These are important, especially when entering new global markets in developing countries. Realisation of some of these opportunities may require an increased awareness that the present performance level is not up to global best practice. This awareness is normally created through exposure to best practice during visits to companies, enabling participants to form a picture of what is both possible and required.

---

## Threats

Threats arise, for example, from the limited amount of support for and recognition of SMEs, from high costs (see above), from the limited knowledge of and preparedness to enter Asian markets, and from a challenging regulatory environment.

Threats have also been identified related to both the food companies’ and raw material suppliers’ vulnerability to natural and environmental threats, such as drought and other weather-related challenges, including climate change.

The highly competitive environment as relates to Asia – although potentially useful, in principle, in driving improved performance – can be challenging for smaller food companies. This is further complicated by the complexity and inconsistency of the regulatory regimes and behavioural customs in some of the target markets.

Similarly, some Australian regulatory actions appear as threats and cause debate; for example regimes such as Wine Equalisation Tax (WET) have changed the industry dynamics, but similarly abolishing WET would result in reduced profitability.

### Table 6. SWOT Analysis of the luxury and functional food chains.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SWOT ANALYSIS</th>
<th>Current state of the South Australian Functional and Luxury Food Industry</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **STRENGTHS** | • Many unique businesses, niche market players and ‘gap fillers’ with novelty value  
|               | • Long traditions and quite strong business culture with a variety of different companies and high-quality products  
|               | • Experienced businesses and some pioneering operations and initiatives: learning from more experienced businesses, interest in mentoring possibilities (ecosystem thinking and benefits)  
|               | • Good relationships and level of trust among businesses and sustainable relationships with suppliers, customers, regulators etc.  
|               | • Some “pockets” of collaboration  
|               | • Diversity in regional climates, attributes and cultures  
|               | • Innovative culture and tradition  
|               | • Healthy independent retail sector  
|               | • Primary industry funding schemes such as AFM (Advanced Food Manufacturing) grants and DSIP’s (Department of State Development) grants supporting innovation, SA innovation vouchers, micro finance fund grants  
|               | • Demonstrated collaborative mechanisms and cooperation builders such as SA Food, SAWIA and other industry organisations  |
| **WEAKNESS**  | • Conservative and traditional attitudes and quite slow development, with a few exceptions  
|               | • Cautious product development  
|               | • Small amount of genuine luxury and functional products – value chains generally quite short  
|               | • Size of the local customer base is generally too small for high value luxury and functional products: resulting in a limited interest in product development and innovation in the luxury and functional fields  
|               | • Limited interest and capabilities to export  
|               | • Difficulties in finding right partners for export  
|               | • Limited funds for new machinery, facilities and R&D  
|               | • Limited collaboration in exports  
|               | • Distance to Australian markets  
|               | • Threats to water supply/security  
|               | • Rising input costs associated with business operations  
|               | • Scale and complexity of distribution systems  
|               | • An ongoing need for infrastructure in some regional areas  |
| **OPPORTUNITIES** | • Collaboration possibilities in exports  
|               | • Recognition and full utilisation of the specialities and resources of the region  
|               | • Improving the readiness to enter Asian markets  
|               | • Increasing the amount of R&D, product development and technology – where feasible  
|               | • Spreading and utilising the existing knowledge within the value network; increasing the market intelligence  
|               | • Increasing health consciousness  
|               | • Increasing the understanding of diverse range of customers and potential customers (needs, habits, culture, etc.)  
|               | • Providing help in partnership building, and in establishing international connections (e.g., international boards, visits)  
|               | • Simplifying and standardising regulation and certifications  
|               | • Increasing demand for safe and nutritional food production systems  
|               | • Increasing diversity of food markets  
|               | • Ensuring a competitive trade and service provider network  
|               | • Growing food service industry  
|               | • Enhancing the food, wine and tourism experience  |
| **THREATS**    | • Not enough funding and recognition for SMEs  
|               | • Limited knowledge and preparedness to enter the Asian markets  
|               | • Too much bureaucracy and tax burden  
|               | • Vulnerability to natural and environmental threats (water, drought, energy etc.); impacts of climate change and variability  
|               | • Highly competitive environment with a wide range of risks, regulation, and difficult requirements (Asian markets)  
|               | • Complex and inconsistent certification system that needs standardisation  
|               | • Exposure to commodity and currency volatility  
|               | • Future labour shortages and low rates of skilled labour retention  
|               | • High costs of business operations  
|               | • Access to capital for future expansion  
|               | • Challenges of the Australian packaging industry: worries of the interviewed companies related to local availability for differentiated and luxury packaging  
|               | • Highly competitive environment with a wide range of risks, regulation, and requirements (Asian markets)  |
Technology Assessment

An assessment of technologies and capabilities was undertaken in Phase 2 of the project. Technology assessment determines the relevance and implications of food technologies. The Technology Readiness Level (TRL) method is used for evaluating the maturity of technology for operational deployment. Some technologies, such as food processing technologies, are relevant in the food and beverage industry as a whole, but the VTT research project tried to emphasise elements that are linked directly to functional or luxury food domains. Naturally, enabling technologies are more important to functional food than to luxury food.

This technology assessment is near future-oriented; that is, it looks at interesting new and emerging technologies and innovations that shape the food industry and its development now and in the near-future. Technologies were selected based on their current relevance for functional and luxury foods, and on their future-oriented value. Thus the technologies discussed typically have medium and high technology readiness levels (TRLs). Technologies that have low TRLs, and thus are not relevant for the South Australian food industry in the near-future, were not discussed.

Functional foods and beverages benefit more from technology, and tend to rely more on it than the luxury domain, in which the role of food technological advancement is relatively small (with the exception of packaging technologies).

In Phase 1 of the project, the interviews conducted revealed that many food companies in South Australia are interested in benefitting more from the latest food technology development and innovation. The technology assessment component in Phase 2 of the project provided more information in order to fully utilise new technology and innovations related to food production. Interviewed companies expressed an interest in increasing the amount of research and development (R&D) undertaken by them and in product development and the use of technology to achieve this, as well as in utilising outside R&D knowledge, but only when feasible (that is, outside of the organisation). A selection of relevant technology providers has been included with this assessment.

Both limited funds and limited local know-how within the food industry restrict the spreading of new food technologies and innovations. There is some food technology education in the local universities, for example both the University of South Australia and the University of Adelaide have combined food and nutrition sciences programs at the Bachelor level.

Closer links could be fostered with national and international research providers. For example, the Australian Research Council (ARC) has awarded more funding to promote industry-university linkages and is currently running an Industrial Transformation Research Program (ITRP) in which food and agriculture is one of the chosen topics for the year 2015, with a special focus on areas such as dairy innovation, rock lobsters, value chains and ASEAN markets. Local capabilities within the food industry could be strengthened, for example, in utilising science and technology in nutrition, in tailoring the food products with enzymes and microbes, and generally in improving the functionality of foods. Utilising new technologies and techniques is important in order to develop new health promoting value added products.

Technology readiness

Technology readiness measures the extent to which a technology is suited for deployment in a real operational environment. It also provides a common understanding of technology status, that is,

how readily a food or beverage business can buy this technology and use it. In this study VTT applied the commonly used Technology Readiness Levels (TRL) categorised by the European Union, with number 9 being the most mature technology⁶.

The Technology Readiness Levels are:

- TRL 1: Basic principles observed
- TRL 2: Technology concept formulated
- TRL 3: Experimental proof of concept
- TRL 4: Technology validated in lab
- TRL 5: Technology validated in relevant environment (industrially relevant environment in the case of key enabling technologies)
- TRL 6: Technology demonstrated in relevant environment (industrially relevant environment in the case of key enabling technologies)
- TRL 7: System prototype demonstration in operational environment
- TRL 8: System complete and qualified
- TRL 9: Actual system proven in operational environment (competitive manufacturing in the case of key enabling technologies)
- Beyond 9 – full scale industrial use

The assessment below concentrates on technologies related to food preparation and processing, but also includes wider themes and trends, such as digitalisation and packaging technologies as a whole. Naturally all technology related phenomena, such as digitalisation as a wider megatrend in a society, cannot be described within the TRL system, and it is used when seen as suitable. The TRLs of portrayed technologies are presented in Table 7 and further explained in the text below.

Manufacturing readiness levels inside South Australian food industry similarly vary, which the VTT researchers took into account when formulating recommendations and future pathways for the industry.

Table 7. TRLs of assessed technologies.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Technologies and innovations</th>
<th>Technology Readiness Level</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Digitalisation: E-commerce solutions such as mobile commerce, electronic funds transfer,</td>
<td>High: 8–9 and beyond</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>supply chain management, Internet marketing, online transaction processing, electronic</td>
<td>High: 9 and beyond</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>data interchange, inventory management systems, and automated data collection systems</td>
<td>High: 9 and beyond</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Food processing technologies: High Pressure Processing (HPP)</td>
<td>High: 9 and beyond</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Food processing technologies: Pulsed Electric Field (PEF)</td>
<td>High: 9 and beyond</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Food processing technologies: Microwave treatment and UV pasteurisation</td>
<td>High: 9 and beyond</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Food processing technologies: Cold plasma</td>
<td>Medium-high: 6–7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3D printing in general, e.g. plastics and metals</td>
<td>High: 8–9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3D food printing / bioprinting</td>
<td>Medium: 4–6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active food packaging technologies; absorbents, scavangers, antioxidative and</td>
<td>High: 9 and beyond</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>antimicrobial packaging</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Digitalisation of food industry

Digital technologies are creating major opportunities for the food industry. Digitalisation – also referred as digitisation – is a megatrend. Megatrends are large, social, economic, political, environmental or technological changes and macro-economic forces of development that impact business, economy, society, cultures and personal lives.

It is argued that by the year 2020, an entire generation, Generation C (for ‘connected’), will have grown up in a primarily digital world (PWC, 2015). The effects of an increasingly digitised world are now reaching into every corner of our lives because three forces are powerfully reinforcing one another (PWC; 2015):

- **Consumer pull**: Consumers are adapted to the digital environment. They expect to be always connected, are willing to share personal data, and are more likely to trust referrals from their closest friends than well-known brands.
- **Technology push**: Digital technology continues to expand its influence. The infrastructure backbone of the digital world is bringing affordable broadband to billions of consumers. In parallel, low-cost connected devices are being deployed in every industry, and cloud computing, and the vast information-processing machinery it requires, is developing quickly.
- **Economic benefits**: The economic benefits to be captured through digitisation are real. A wave of capital has poured into the new digitisation technologies and companies, and the public markets reward early movers with unprecedented valuations.

As identified in Phase 1 of the project, online sales and home shopping are quickly becoming the distribution mode of choice globally due to consumers’ ability to make informed decisions and compare prices. Online retailing is changing food and beverage trading, and the industry actors need to be prepared for the change. In Australia, e-commerce sales in general rose 14.4% in 2015 to pass $10 billion (Table 8, eMarketer, 2015⁷).

---

Table 8. E-commerce sales in Australia.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>2013</th>
<th>2014</th>
<th>2015</th>
<th>2016</th>
<th>2017</th>
<th>2018</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Total retail sales</td>
<td>$222.09</td>
<td>$231.41</td>
<td>$238.59</td>
<td>$245.75</td>
<td>$253.12</td>
<td>$260.46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retail e-commerce</td>
<td>$8.01</td>
<td>$9.40</td>
<td>$10.76</td>
<td>$12.05</td>
<td>$13.32</td>
<td>$14.52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>% Change in e-commerce</td>
<td>11.6%</td>
<td>17.3%</td>
<td>14.4%</td>
<td>12.0%</td>
<td>10.6%</td>
<td>9.0%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Even if less than 1% of food beverage sales currently occur online⁸, digitalisation is also a global food trend. It takes place especially through the changing rules of communication and human behaviour. For example, online shopping continues to grow rapidly and is influencing the retail landscape. Open innovation, crowdsourcing and co-creation are in the core of digitalisation of the food industry. As shopping habits are changing, niche online grocery services such as functional or luxury foods can disrupt the traditions of grocery retail.

A number of food and beverage brands have demonstrated original ideas using social media and digital technology (Weston, 2014; Muckersie, 2014). FreshMinds (Muckersie, 2014) have benchmarked five leading food and beverage companies that are pushing the boundaries in their industry, using digital technologies to drive innovation – including Starbucks, Coca Cola, AB InBev, Nestle and Cadbury.

For example, Starbucks globally launched a Tweet-A-Coffee service as well as mobile payments, Cadbury has used 3D printing to create edible prototypes and employed 3D printing as part of their new product development process, and KitKat has crowdsourced new flavours.

Coca Cola developed its existing business model to foster new growth – particularly with regard to devising marketing campaigns and developing new products. For example, via crowdsourcing Coca-Cola has obtained over 3,000 different interpretations of their new brand positioning from consumers in the form of videos, drawing and photos. These feed into the brand campaign, with one even being released as part of the company’s marketing campaign in Asia. Coca-Cola has also been at the forefront of innovation in product development, for example their FreeStyle machine allows customers to mix flavours to create a unique drink. This is a good example of mass-personalisation and co-creation with customers.

AB InBev has recognised that by partnering with people from outside their organisation, they will be able to source new and innovative ideas. The company has created an Open Innovation Portal on its website, which lists both specific briefs and general areas of interest and encourages individuals to submit their solutions. Restaurants have got in on the act too, with novel ideas such as providing edible QR codes to check for mislabelled food, or giving customers iPads/tablets to create their own cocktails – with the chance to earn commission if others subsequently buy the drink.

Digitalisation is also a key theme in the 2016 Fruit Logistica (International Trade Fair for Fruit and Vegetable Marketing). Food fairs and events have recognised that digitalisation of the retail trade offers many opportunities, but it also presents a number of challenges. New packaging solutions are

required, and providers need to cooperate as closely as possible – the key to this is urban retail logistics\(^9\).

Generally digitalisation impacts on all areas of the value chain. For online food and beverage companies to deliver the freshness consumers want, they have to be able to deliver orders fast, while still maintaining the quality of easily damaged foods such as fresh produce. But there are also advantages to online grocery shopping, especially in specialised functional and luxury products. For example, in the United States, only 15% of consumers have purchased general food items online, but 25% said they have bought specialty food and beverages online, which are otherwise hard to find elsewhere\(^10\).

Similarly, new start-ups that focus on concierge shopping and subscriptions for prepared meals develop online grocery models and offer services that are differentiated from traditional supermarket shopping. Business Insider (Smith, 2015) believes that these services could change the way people shop for food. In South Australia, Food South Australia supports e-commerce activities and provides help and contacts for interested businesses\(^11\).

Since digitalisation does not refer to a single technology but to a myriad of different solutions, technology readiness levels within the digitisation development vary. TRL of most of the basic e-trade and e-commerce solutions such as online-stores, mobile payment and customer engagement platforms is already high (7-9), and more solutions are constantly being developed related to, for example, crowdsourcing and the Internet of Things (IoT) (see also the section on sensors and monitoring). Software solutions and applications related to the IoT are among the fastest growing emerging markets. In essence, this refers to the ability to connect remote or mobile machines to networks through advanced wireless connectivity and low-cost sensors. In addition, robotics technology – e.g. in batch production and as service robotics with face recognition capabilities – is a growing application field.

Digitalisation and the IoT have impacts on the monitoring of the mechanical, nutritional, quality and other attributes of food and food ingredients. Real-time monitoring of food appearance by a computer vision system is already being used and has become a key issue in the food industry, since it is a consistent, efficient, and cost effective alternative over the off-line destructive methods such as dye, peel or burst tests. The digital approach is a rapid, safe, reliable, and non-destructive technique, which requires no sample withdrawing and can be applied as in-line, at-line, on-line and off-line measurement tools for the shape, size, colour, and texture analyses in food processing operations.

One key attribute that enables image processing suitable for qualitative measurements during food processing is the relationship between the product quality attributes and the appearance of foods including physical structure, colour, and visual texture. Thus, a rapid image-based screening technique providing information regarding the organoleptic properties would be useful in food processing operations (Aghbashlo et al., 2014).

In order to survive and succeed in the future competition, it should be of interest to South Australian food industries to apply, for example, advanced, real-time inspection tools capable of in-process


monitoring of food and beverage attributes. Such applications would enable automation while maintaining very high and consistent yields.

Food processing technologies
For the purpose of the Phase 2 technology assessment, VTT selected food processing technologies identified in the interviews with food companies as relevant for the South Australian food industry. Application domains of the chosen technologies include the dairy, meat, seafood, fruits and vegetables, and processed foods industries.

The main drivers for the development of new food processing technologies are higher quality products, improved product safety, and longer shelf life, as well as reduced resource footprint. Non-thermal preservation technologies such as High Pressure Processing (HPP) and Pulsed Electric Field (PEF) have less impact on the (fresh) sensory characteristics of the product than conventional technologies. With non-thermal preservation technologies, additives and heat treatments can be avoided. Thus these technologies are suitable for heat sensitive food materials (Saldana et al., 2014, Jermann et al. 2015). However, regulatory issues need to be considered.

High Pressure Processing
High Pressure Processing (HPP) enables significant reduction of microbial levels in a very short treatment time. It is commercially used to treat numerous different types of foods including meat, seafood, dairy, fruits and vegetables, and processed foods. In the dairy industry it can be used to simultaneously pasteurise and homogenise liquid milk (Hayes et al. 2005). Industrial scale HPP equipment is available for example from AVURE technologies and Hiberbaric. Technology readiness level of HPP is 9 and beyond; the technology is already industrial-scale. The benefits of HPP are shown in Figure 6.

Figure 6. Benefits of HPP.

Commercial solutions of HPP include, for example:

---
- **Meat and seafood**: Reduce or eliminate preservatives. More than 2-times longer shelf life; 100% meat separation from shells.
- **Fruits, juices and vegetables**: Meets FDA’s 5 Log pathogen rule (enables 5 Log-value reduction in the levels of pathogens), no changes in flavour, sugars, citric acid, pH and aromatic components.
- **Processing parameters**: Large capacity: 370 kg / cycle. Fast processing time: 10 cycles / hour = 3700 kg/h.

**Pulsed Electric Field**

Pulsed Electric Field (PEF) inactivates microbes but leaves proteins mostly intact (retaining flavours). It enhances mechanical disintegration and can improve enzyme hydrolysis. In addition to pasteurisation, PEF can be used to enhance the cold extraction (up to 80%) efficiency of juices, colours and bioactive compounds from mainly plant-based materials such as roots, fruits, vegetables, grass and leaves, and protein rich products. Manufacturers of PEF equipment for industrial scale applications are for example Elea and Pulsemaster. The technology readiness level of PEF for this equipment is 9 and beyond and the technology is already in industrial use.

**Cold plasma**

Cold plasma is an emerging technology and is not yet available for industrial scale food processing; technology readiness level is around 6–7. Plasma could be applied in the disinfection of (equipment) surfaces, packaging, food contact surfaces and even food itself. It has been tested successfully, for example, for the microbial decontamination of strawberries inside a closed package. Since plasma treatment requires no liquids it can be used to treat low water activity products. In Australia, cold plasma has been studied, for example, as an effective method for killing pathogens on uncooked poultry (Sagar, 2012).

Some older technologies have now been upscaled for industrial processes. These include microwave treatment and UV pasteurisation (of beverages) (Rupasinghe & Yu, 2012). TRLs of microwave treatment and UV pasteurisation are at level 9 and beyond.

**Biotechnology for food**

Biotechnology has vast potential in the improvement and development of foods. It has an important role to play in helping to deal with emerging challenges, including those arising from climate change, pressure on global food supplies and the management of pests and diseases. Biotechnology can also benefit the environment through reduced chemical use, and consumers through the development of healthier products.

In Australia, the Federal Department of Agriculture is committed to making Australian agriculture, fisheries and forestry more sustainable, competitive and profitable. Many universities in Australia,
including the University of Adelaide, also offer undergraduate and postgraduate studies in biotechnology and in food and nutrition science.

Biotechnical applications utilise either living microbes or microbial components (enzymes, metabolites) in food processing. Biotechnology is a wide domain, with examples of these technologies at all technology readiness levels, and new technologies being developed continuously. For this assessment VTT selected a number of case studies that could be of interest, especially to the South Australian functional food industry.

**Enzymatic processing**

Currently the global interest in enzymatic processing is mostly focused on texture and structure tailoring and functionalisation of plant proteins. Cross-linking enzymes such as transglutaminase and deaminase are used in these applications (Buchert et al., 2010; Ercili-Cura et al., 2015; Jiang et al. 2015). Various oxidative enzymes also have the potential to be used for cross-linking. These include tyrosinases, laccases, peroxidases, sulphhydryl oxidase, lipoxygenases, and glucose and hexose oxidases (Buchert et al., 2007). Currently transglutaminase is the most widely used enzyme for texture/structure tailoring. Laccase is used in wine and beer stabilisation, and fruit juice processing (Osma et al., 2010).

**Microbial products**

Microbial products can be used to replace synthetic dyes (Malik et al., 2012) and flavours (Häusler & Munch, 1997). The cost of the technology for microbial pigment production on an industrial scale is still relatively high, and there is a need for developing low cost process for the production of the pigments that could replace the synthetic ones. Utilising cheaply available agro-food-industrial sidestreams as microbial substrates through solid-state fermentation may provide interesting opportunities.

In addition to pigments, microbes can also be used to produce natural food additives\(^\text{21}\). A specific example in wine production is utilisation of novel yeast protein extracts in white wines clarification and stabilization, instead of traditionally used animal and mineral based fining agents (Fernandes et al. 2015).

More traditional use of biotechnology involves food fermentation. Some traditional fermented foods have been reintroduced, or production started in new countries; e.g. cultured dairy products kefir\(^\text{22}\) and Skyr\(^\text{23}\). Fermented dairy foods link with many consumer trends such as naturalness, gut health and high protein demand.

**Functional ingredients production technologies**

Functional ingredients (FIs) serve to introduce and improve quality attributes of food products such as nutritional properties, health benefits, and microbiological stability. Furthermore, they serve as the basis for formulation of functional foods (Besbes et al., 2012).

Currently in South Australia, functional food is mainly produced by adding functional ingredients into products or via ‘free-from’ products. Manufacturing and testing new functional ingredients is a


specified technology domain that can provide opportunities for South Australia in the long term (five to 10 years).

Production of functional and bioactive ingredients typically involves the use of product-specific technologies. Various extraction technologies are used to isolate bioactive compounds from plant tissues, microbes, algae and microalgae. These include technologies such as (traditional) solvent extraction (including solid-liquid extraction), pressurised liquid extraction, subcritical fluid extraction, supercritical fluid extraction, pulsed electric field extraction, microwave-/ultrasonic-/enzyme assisted extraction, and instant controlled pressure drop-assisted extraction (Gil-Chavez et al., 2012; Azmir et al., 2013; Baiano, 2014).

Other technologies used in the production of bioactive ingredients include membrane technologies such as ultra- and nanofiltration (e.g. for the recovery of bioactive peptides and lactose and whey processing) (Salehi, 2014; Pabby et al., 2015); chromatographic and electrophoretic techniques (Aider et al., 2011).

3D printing and food
There is a lot of hype around additive manufacturing, and it is said that 3D food printing has the potential to revolutionise food production (Wiggers, 2015). 3D printing is generally stacking materials layer upon layer, based on an electronic blueprint on a computer.

3D food printing connects information and software to cooking. There are many challenges in 3D printing of foods, for example how to make food materials with the right consistency so that they will not stick in the printing machine, but at the same time retain their form after printing.

Another challenge is that often more than one material needs to be mixed to create a conceivably good dish (Huen, 2015a). At the moment 3D food printing is a niche technique, but it will affect the future of food – currently it is being explored, for example, as a unique and creative method to showcase food. However, in the coming 5-10 years, 3D printing of food potential may be realised in domains of nutrition, appearance and structure-texture design, flavour, and hybrid and personalised products.

For health-conscious consumers, 3D food printing could provide newer, better options for sweets, pastries, ice creams - or something entirely different. In the functional and specialised food industries, the biggest opportunities lie in the growing interest in on-demand customised food for people with special dietary needs, such as pregnant women, athletes or those who are managing health conditions, such as diabetes (Crawford, 2015).

3D food printing can help transform alternative ingredients like proteins from algae, beet leaves or insects, that are otherwise hard to process into tasty products with recognisable structures that are good not only for health, but also for the environment (TNO, 2015).

Innovative companies such as Phillips are interested in the combination of medicine and food. For patients who swallow daily medicine, a food printer would be an ideal solution (3ders, 2011). 3D printed food could also enable food service providers to more easily substitute vegan or vegetarian options for animal proteins or create novelty items with personalised messages or shapes.

In the luxury food business, the biggest impacts are related, for example, to fine dining and restaurants. 3D food printing offers a huge degree of freedom in terms of design. This applies not only to the 3D shape but also to the composition, structure, texture as well as taste (TNO, 2015). The printer can also ensure that a personalised meal is made at exactly the right moment in the home or in a restaurant. This convenience can lead to flexible decentralised (local) production (TNO, 2015).
3D printer options

The Dutch research organisation TNO (2015) currently combines expertise in 3D printing technology with food science to create ultra-modern technology for the production of new food products, and argues that food printing is a new way to create food products with unique quality aspects that can be fully personalised. It can make tangible contributions to people’s health and sustainable production in the future. For example, together with Barilla, TNO has developed a prototype pasta printer that is capable of printing 3D pasta shapes. In Australia, CSIRO provides Australian companies with access to additive manufacturing technologies, but currently only in non-food areas.

Within the medical sector, Australia has had a relatively long history in bioprinting research and development, for example the Queensland University of Technology (QUT) offers master’s degrees in biofabrication. In South Australia, existing capabilities are more limited, but as the use of bioprinting will continue to expand as the technology matures (Desmond, 2014), the potential similarly grows. 3D printer expert Kjeld Van Bommel from TNO, who visited South Australia in April 2015, estimates that in five years there will be various food printers on the market that will make this technology accessible to many more businesses (Staight, 2015).

Figure 7. 3D Pasta Printing by TNO (2015), Photo courtesy of TNO.

3D printing has been around for more than 30 years, but lately it has been making more headlines in the food industry. From 3D Systems’ educational partnership with The Culinary Institute of America (CIA), to the Top Chef TV programme, and to the launch of the
educational Culinary Lab, engineers, advertisers and even some Michelin Star chefs are emphasising 3D printing’s potential effect on the food industry (Huen, 2015a).

**Technology readiness of 3D printing**

The technology readiness level of 3D printing varies. With some materials, such as plastics, the technology is widely implemented and ready for markets (TRL 9 and beyond). For differentiated materials such as food, more development is still required (TRL around 4-6; with very special materials such as meat TRL ca. 3).

The VTT researchers indicated that in approximately ten years, 3D printing will become a mainstay in restaurants, including fine dining. The most immediate effect can be seen in the food form, as chefs are able to create forms that would not be possible to make by hand, such as sculptural forms with complex curvature, intricate latticework or filigree, and even structural elements that can act as vessels or scaffolding for elaborately assembled dishes.

In summary, the opportunity horizon for 3D printing is wide. When the technology advances, anyone will be able to create new textures, new flavours, and new combinations like never before. 3D food printing also makes it possible to develop unique new products that cannot be made using other methods, or to change the formula, shape, structure or texture of existing products so that, for example, the taste experience remains the same yet the salt or sugar content is reduced (TNO, 2015).

**Packaging**

**Active, intelligent and sustainable food packaging**

The basic functions of traditional food packaging are protection, communication, convenience, and containment (Yam et al. 2005).

Packaging solutions targeted to the functional and luxury food domains have to fulfil the basic functions of convenience and containment while special emphasis on (brand) protection and communication. When it comes to luxury food packaging, the brand owners need to shift from ‘designing for a product’ towards ‘creating an experience’ to achieve a higher level of brand desire (Lacroix 2015), including polysensuality, aesthetics and signalling.

The main aim for functional foods packaging is to make the package communicate the benefits of the functional product to consumers. Many of the new innovations in intelligent, smart and active food packaging are aimed at enhancing the product safety and shelf life of the product, and at augmenting and securing the brand experience.

The packaging section of the Functional and Luxury Foods Project Literature Review highlighted several opportunities for South Australia including flexible plastic modified atmosphere packaging, smart labelling and informative design, sustainability, active packaging (i.e. laminated plastics with antioxidants), and luxury food packaging for brand enhancement. For this study, VTT focused on technologies enabling these opportunities.

**Active packaging**

Active food packaging is defined as a system which changes the condition of the packed food to extend shelf life or to improve safety or sensory properties, while maintaining the quality of food (Ahvenainen 2003). Examples of active food packaging include absorbing and scavenging systems, releasing systems, and systems where substances are grafted or immobilised onto the wall of the packaging (Lee & Rahman 2013).
Oxidation is one of the major contributors to food quality deterioration. It may facilitate microbial growth, off-flavour and off-odour development, colour changes, and lead to nutritional losses, therefore limiting the shelf life of food. There are several ways to reduce oxidation of food, such as barrier materials, oxygen scavengers, modified atmospheric packaging and antioxidative packaging. Modified atmospheric packaging (MAP) has a great importance in active packaging but as it is a rather mature technology, it is not discussed in detail here.

Currently, several oxygen scavenging or removing devices are commercially available, for example for packaged muscle-based (meat, fish, etc.) food systems including (Kerry 2013):

- Sachets: Ageless (Mitsubishi Gas Chemical Co.), ATCO (Emco Packaging Systems), FreshPax (Multisorb Technologies, Inc.), and Oxysorb (Pillsbury Co.)
- Labels: ATCO DE 10 (Emco Packaging Systems)
- Polymer-based oxygen scavenging films: Cryovac OS2000 (Cryovac Division, Sealed Air Corporation), ZERO 2 (developed by CSIRO, Division of Food Science Australia, in collaboration with VisyPak Food Packaging, Visy Industries, Melbourne)

With regard to absorbing systems, for example for muscle-based products (meat, fish), several companies manufacture drip-absorbent sheets or pads: for example Cryovac’s Dri-Loc (Sealed Air Corporation), Peaksorb (Peakfresh South Australia), and Fresh-R-Pax (Maxwell Chase Technologies).

High carbon dioxide levels in MAP are desirable for foods such as meat, poultry, and seafood to inhibit surface microbial growth and to extend shelf life. There are active packaging approaches that combine MAP with oxygen absorbing and CO$_2$ releasing systems for fresh meats and fish; Ageless G (Mitsubishi Gas Chemical) and FreshPax (Multisorb Technologies) (Han 2013). According to Kerry (2013), carbon dioxide emitting sachets or labels, such as Verifrais package (SARL Codimer) and CO$_2$ Fresh Pads (CO$_2$ Technologies), can also be used alone to extend the shelf life of fresh meat of fish.

Antioxidative packaging systems

Antioxidative packaging systems have been developed to reduce or to stop oxidation. There are several commercially available synthetic antioxidants, such as butylated hydroxyanisole (BHA), butylated hydroxytoluene (BHT), and Irganox® which can be incorporated into food packaging polymers, such as in PET.

Due to consumers’ concerns regarding synthetic antioxidants, the use of natural oxidants, such as tocopherol, ascorbic acid, curcumin, tyrosine, essential oils and plant extracts of barley husks, borage, cinnamon, citronella, clove, ginger, green tea, marigold, murta leaves, rosemary, oregano, and thyme, have also recently been studied, especially for their potential to be incorporated into packaging polymers and released to packaging contents in a controlled manner (Lee 2013).

Antimicrobial food packaging

Antimicrobial food packaging could present significant potential to reduce microbial growth in food systems and to extend product shelf life. However, Corrales et al. (2013) have noted that antimicrobial packages have had relatively little commercial success outside of Japan.

In Japan, the most common antimicrobial agent incorporated into plastics has been silver-substituted zeolite. Although antimicrobial packaging could extend food shelf life, there are some obstacles to overcome before commercialisation. These include regulatory
requirements, cost-to-benefit ratio, production capability, commercial viability, consumer acceptance, and sensory effects on food. Examples of commercial antimicrobial materials include (Corrales et al. 2013):

- concentrates; e.g. Agion, (Agion Technologies LLC)
- extracts; e.g. Nisaplin (Integrated Ingredients)
- films; e.g. MicroGARD (DuPont, Wilmington, DE)

Antimicrobial packaging systems are intended to provide controlled release of antimicrobials. The novel developments in antimicrobial food packaging are related to advances in nanotechnology and micro- and nanoencapsulation. Corrales et al. (2013) foresee that food biopolymers and hydrocolloids could be promising materials to produce micro- and nano-scaled carriers of bioactive compounds. Other biopreservation strategies, such as probiotics, have been suggested to expand the possibilities for antimicrobial packages (Corrales et al. 2013).

**Intelligent packaging**

Intelligent packaging is a system capable of carrying out intelligent functions to facilitate decision making, to extend shelf life, and to enhance safety. Examples of these functions include detecting, sensing, recording, tracing, communicating, and applying scientific logic (Yam et al. 2005). Three main intelligent packaging components include 1) indicators, 2) sensors, and 3) barcodes and indication tags, (e.g. NFC, RFID) (Yam et al. 2005, Vanderroost et al. 2014).

**Food packaging indicators**

Food packaging indicators provide visual and qualitative (or semi-qualitative) information about the packaged food (Vanderrroost et al. 2014). The main mechanisms for detection are a colour change, an increase in colour intensity, or diffusion of a dye along a straight path (Kerry et al. 2006). Due to intensive research in this field there are several s for food packaging, as shown in Table 9.

**Table 9. Examples of commercially available indicators for food packaging (Vanderrroost et al. 2014, Steeman 2015).**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicator type</th>
<th>Company or product name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gas</td>
<td>Novas Insignia Technologies</td>
<td>A special pigment for products packed in a modified atmosphere (MAP) plastic packaging showing damaged packages. Visual indicator based on colour change for sealed food packaging. Indicates breach of integrity in the package.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Freshness</td>
<td>FreshTag®</td>
<td>Indicator based on colour change which detects volatile amines (e.g. in seafood).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>RipeSense®</td>
<td>Indicator based on colour change which indicates the ripeness of fruits.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time-Temperature</td>
<td>3M MonitorMark, Timestrip Complete, Fresh-Check, CheckPoint, CoolVu Food, Innolabel Timestrip, K1/CRYOPAK</td>
<td>E.g. indicating how long a product is within a certain temperature range. CheckPoint indicator is adapted to toxin formation of Clostridium botulinum in a certain temperature range (for seafood). Cryopak’s K1 is an electronic temperature indicator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thermochromic ink</td>
<td>LCR Hallcrest; Chromatic Technologies Inc; Matsui International Company, Inc.</td>
<td>Temperature dependent reversible colour change.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

52
**Food packaging sensors**

Unlike indicators, food packaging sensors are able to provide quantitative information (for example on concentration, humidity, pH, temperature, light exposure) and can store the measurement data and time.

Chemical sensors have recently received increasing attention for monitoring food quality and package integrity. One of the potential applications is the use of volatile organic compounds (VOC) and gases (H₂, CO, NO₂, O₂, H₂S, NH₃, CO₂, CH₄) to detect food spoilage and package leakage in modified atmosphere packaging (Vanderroost et al. 2014).

Unlike food packaging indicators, a large scale market entry for intelligent packaging sensors is still in the future. The barriers to apply sensors on a large scale include: current large size and rigidity, high development and production costs, insufficient robustness and sensitivity, strict legislation; and food safety considerations (Vanderroost et al. 2014).

Research in this field has been advancing rapidly and there are several technologies, such as printed electronics, carbon nanotechnology, silicon photonics, and biotechnology that may enable the development of better chemical sensors. Data exchange technologies (RFID, NCF) combined with sensor and indicator technologies is a promising future concept for intelligent food packaging. There are some sensor-enabled RFID and NCF tags commercially available, thus further development is needed for large scale commercialisation (Vanderroost et al. 2014, Thinfilm 2015).

**Automatic Identification technologies**

Automatic Identification (Auto ID) technologies comprise radio frequency identification (RFID), barcodes, Quick-Response (QR) codes, magnetic, conductive inks and the like. Automatic identification technologies are typically applied for identification, automatisation, anti-tamper and anti-counterfeit purposes (Vanderroost et al. 2014).

RFID technology is widely used in various applications in the agri-food sector. Applications such as the traceability of fresh produce and food products, cold chain monitoring, shelf life prediction, quality monitoring, and supply chain management have been reported (see e.g. Kumari et al. 2015). Luxury food brand protection (such as security and anti-counterfeit) is one of the key applications for RFID technologies.

A Norwegian printed electronics company, Thin Film Electronics, has recently launched a printed electronics RFID tag based on near-field communication (NFC) technology, aimed at product security and consumer engagement, shown in Figure 8. According to Plimmer (2013), by including NFC-enabled tags in their packaging and labels, brand owners can provide valuable information to their customers, build brand loyalty and enhance the brand experience.
Thin Film OpenSense™

- Identifiable NFC tags which can be integrated into consumables and their packaging, e.g. wine
- Tag senses the “sealed” or “opened” state of the product or package and wirelessly transmits status information along with the tag’s unique identifier
- Interactive mobile content can be customized based on sealed/opened status
- Passive tag – requires no battery.
- Based on printed electronics

Auto ID technology has progressed from bar codes to QR codes and to digital watermarks. Digital watermarking as such is not a new technology, but the use of embedded machine-readable images within the graphics application in packaging and labels sector is still emerging. The technology allows brands to keep their design clean (Steeman, 2015).

Besides brand enhancement and protection, this technology can be used for consumer engagement. Availability of apps for smart phones that recognise digital watermarks and are able to link commands to multi-media internet content has contributed to the introduction of digital watermarking technologies to packaging (Plimmer, 2013).

Touchcode is a new concept, where brand protection and enhancement is based on a conductive ink signature embedded in packaging, labels and other objects that a smartphone or other sensing device can detect through capacitive touch, without need for camera imaging (Steeman 2015).

Augmented reality

Augmented reality (AR) is another type of interactive tool that enables brand owners to interact with consumers on their smart phones and mobile devices. It also allows adding a digital component to static packaging. In recent years some of the large food companies, such as Nestlé, Kraft Foods, Kellogg’s, General Mills, and Mondēlez International have integrated augmented reality into their brands (Plimmer, 2013; Johnson, 2013). Augmented reality can also be used as an enabler in B2B applications. For example Tyler Packaging offers AR apps to visualise their packaging designs, creating a short-cut from design to manufacturing (Tyler Packaging, 2015).

Intelligent packaging solutions and applications have practical implications for anti-counterfeiting and traceability which are both critical elements for export, especially into China. Figure 9 summarises the anti-counterfeiting and traceability techniques.
Figure 9. Anti-counterfeiting and traceability techniques.

Biopackaging solutions
Sustainability is seen as one of the key drivers in packaging development, along with economic and demographic drivers. According to Tetra Pak’s director of consumer intelligence, Michela Vallalta,

“...sustainable packaging is effective at alleviating consumer guilt when it communicates its benefits to consumers beyond the recycling symbol—an imperative that plays to the overarching trend of selling provenance along with the product” (Muratoglu 2015).

Sustainability has gained importance in functional food packaging, and it is seen as an important driver for functional food purchasing decisions (e.g. Cosgrove, 2007).

Sustainability can be improved by lightweighted, bio-based materials, such as bioplastics and fibre-based packaging. The main categories of bioplastics include so called drop-in chemicals like bio-PET,-PE, and –PP) (e.g. Braskem /Coca-Cola Plantbottle), other biopolymers, such as polylactic acid (PLA), polydyroxyalkanoates (PHA), and starch-based bioplastics.

The main market for bioplastics is in the category of short shelf life products, such as fresh fruits and vegetables, and long shelf life products, such as pasta and potato chips (Peelman et al., 2013). Use of bioplastics in luxury chocolate packaging has also been reported (e.g. Plantic, 2008).

Convenient food packaging solutions
According to Maratoglu (2015), consumers desire convenient food packaging:

“...packaging that is appropriately sized, and easy to grip and hold, open and close, is the difference between frustration and a return customer. Additionally, packaging aimed at
seniors should be mindful of aging eyes, with larger print and clear and intuitive markings indicating openings”.

Convenience is seen to be an important driver for food packaging innovation (e.g. Bertrand Connolly, 2014). When targeting a highly safety-conscious export market, anti-tampering requirements and packaging convenience needs to be balanced. There are several commercially available easy-to-open and resealable food package solutions currently available. In Australia, NSW Health has published both design guidelines and a database of accessible food packaging solutions, although the target group in this case is hospital patients and elderly people at home (NSW Health no year; ACI, 2014).

Technology providers
Examples of global technology providers in the food area include companies such as GEA, Bühler, Alfa Laval, Krones and Tetra Laval (DeLaval).

GEA produces and maintains a multitude of industrial food processing equipment for many products, such as coffee and tea, food ingredients, fruit and vegetables, oil, starch and sweeteners, confectionery and bakeries, frozen food, liquid food, and poultry, meat and seafood. They provide technologies for distillation and fermentation, drying, filling and packaging, and separation and particle processing. They also provide holistic solutions for livestock farming and the dairy industry. In addition to processing equipment, they offer a range of services including modernisation, (preventive) maintenance, training and upgrades.

Bühler also operates in a range of different food processing areas. Bühler is especially famous for its expertise in grain processing (dehulling, cleaning, sorting, milling, grinding, flaking, sifting and grading) and also provide equipment and services for pelleting, extrusion, coating, packaging etc. Bühler also provides a wide range of services from maintenance to consulting, analytical laboratories, a technology centre and testing facilities, and financial services. Bühler Australia operates from Melbourne.

Alfa Laval provide equipment for food and pet food industries. These include fluid handling (mixing, pumping, tanks), heat transfer systems (boilers, burners, heaters, heat exchangers, heating, ventilating and air conditioning (HVAC) solutions), separation (filters, separators, strainers, membranes), and process solutions (for example for dairy, starch, beverage, plant oil and protein processing). Like other big players in food technology they also have an extensive service portfolio. Alfa Laval has service centres in Victoria, Western Australia, Queensland and New South Wales.

Krones provides plant engineering, process, filling and packaging technologies, intralogistics and IT solutions for the food industry. A range of process technological solutions are provided for beer, soft drink, juice water, milk, and spirits production. Krones Pacific is located in Sydney.

Tetra Laval, well known for its TetraPak liquid food packaging, also provides technology for dairy farmers. The DeLaval branch of Tetra Laval offers automatic and conventional milking systems, cooling and feeding systems, effluent and housing systems, and farm management support systems. DeLaval provides a wide range of services and consumables in the areas of liners and tubes, farm

---

supplies, services and original parts, milk quality and animal health\textsuperscript{28}. DeLaval’s offices are located in Victoria.

Smaller technology providers active in South Australia are typically focused on primary production, engineering and irrigation, but not on food processing. Some other companies with local presence, such as Food Processing Equipment (FPE), are resellers of food processing equipment from other manufacturers.

\textsuperscript{28} Tetra Laval, \url{http://www.tetralaval.com/}, accessed 4.9.2015.
Roadmaps for the South Australian Food Industry

Phase 2 of the project explored preliminary roadmaps for functional and luxury foods [for more information on this technique and how VTT have applied it in this project, see also Methodology, above, and Building roadmaps, below].

Certain elements, such as some drivers and trends, affect the food and beverage industry as a whole and thus are represented in all roadmaps. Other elements are tied more closely only to functional foods or only to the luxury domain. Roadmaps are also structured differently following the different industry structures.

The roadmap for functional foods emphasised the role of enabling technologies and the process leading towards better functional products – the main focus is on adding functional ingredients to products. For luxury food VTT outlined six different roadmaps based on identified product opportunities – the main focus is on maintaining the luxury quality throughout the process. Packaging solutions and technologies complement the roadmaps.

Roadmap structures

There are basically three ways to build roadmaps. The first way is future-oriented, that is, to define a desired vision and the related future targets, and start to extrapolate steps backwards from the vision towards the present stage. This method is known as backcasting. The second method is present-oriented. This approach defines the present state and start to build steps, finally reaching the long-term state or a vision. The third method is a hybrid between the future-oriented and present-oriented methods. Hybridisation allows the roadmapping process to escape process lock-ins that can result from too rigid a process. VTT used the hybridisation method for this study.

The structure of a general roadmap is presented in Figure 10, below. This sample roadmap depicts the impacts of the objects under scrutiny: for example, a new industrial practice and emerging service business at an overall systemic level. In a strategy roadmap, the system could refer to an entity consisting of different actors, such as the actors in the food value chain and the regulatory context of the value chain, or the system could also refer to a convergence of sectors such as food and tourism.

The key purpose of a roadmap is to connect the development of technologies and innovations to a wider societal sphere. The aim is to endorse the formation of policy conclusions based on an in-depth understanding of the technological developments and their socio-economic frameworks.

A roadmap will have a series of roadmap ‘levels’ depicted as rows. The first roadmap level in a roadmap is known as drivers. This level depicts the key drivers and the so-called ‘grand challenges’ that are assessed as the most important factors structuring the roadmap topic. The second level is markets and market changes. These two levels can be presented together, as has been done in this report. The third level is products and applications, with an emphasis particularly on emerging solutions. This level provides critical contextual setting for the policies. The fourth level is that of key enablers, with a primary focus on technologies that enable the industry development. Roadmaps can also have additional levels such as actors and actions, which VTT included in the roadmaps in this project (Figure 11).

An important stage in the roadmapping process is the embedding of results into the local industry context, in this case the South Australian food producing value network, and the related innovation and policy system.

The preliminary roadmaps were finalised as part of Phase 3 of the project by the construction of short term pathways for the industry (pathways with a 3 to 5 year time horizon) and more long term
concise pathways (beyond a 5 year time horizon). These are shown in detail in the ‘Pathways for Future Growth’ sections in this Reference Report.

*Figure 10. Basic Roadmap Structure.*

*Figure 1. Modified Roadmap Structure*
Towards an Innovation Business Ecosystem

Innovating through functional and luxury products can bring new business opportunities to the South Australian food industry, but greater value can emerge from activities combining value chain and innovation ecosystem thinking (see e.g. Hekkert et al. 2007; Nambisan & Baron, 2013).

Having a resilient, innovative economy in South Australia is integral to the core regional goals as outlined by PIRSA (2013b). The ecosystem approach emphasises the utilisation of local knowledge and competencies. The definitions used for innovation ecosystems and hubs often reflect the models of regional innovation systems such as the Triple Helix (Etzkowitz & Leydesdorff, 2000) or learning regions, but the logic behind constructing innovation systems varies from the localised, path-dependent inter-firm learning processes to regionalised national innovation systems, where research and development, and scientific research have taken a much more prominent position (Asheim & Coenen, 2005). However, all ideal models and types emphasise strong regional networking. Another and more demanding criterion is the connection to global value networks and the ability to create value in the global economy (Prahalad & Krishnan, 2008).

The term innovation ecosystem generally refers to a dynamic, interactive network that breeds innovation (Oksanen & Hautamäki, 2014). In practice, the term can refer to local hubs, global networks, or technology platforms. It also has roots in industry and business clusters (Porter, 1998; Estrin, 2008).

*Figure 12: Actor mapping in an innovation ecosystem.*
Similarly, clusters ecosystems are about collaboration, not just locating firms in the same place (see The Economist, 2011). In South Australia, VTT saw seeds of an innovation ecosystem and ecosystem thinking, when local actors work together to produce solutions to different challenges. In the interviews, many respondents stated that the most important support and help they have received is from more experienced businesses. Learning from more experienced businesses and interest in mentoring possibilities highlight potential ecosystem benefits.

The main features of the ecosystem include a symbiotic combination of large established companies (incumbents) and new innovative start-ups, specialisation of and cooperation among companies, service companies specialised in the needs of local companies, a sufficient local market for new innovative products, top-level universities and research institutions, sufficient financing, and global networking (e.g. Kenney, 2000).

Figure 12 reflects the South Australian food business and innovation ecosystem and its key actors, and the mapped actors are presented as a part of the value creation system. The presentation of the key elements and actors follows the business and innovation ecosystem approach, which is useful in anticipating the future developments of different industrial sectors (Andersen et al. 2014).

The food innovation ecosystem may start with how South Australian actors internally structure their processes to deliver the products and services, with the value network that consists of partners, and ultimately, with the stakeholders such as governments, affiliated industry players such as Food South Australia with 270 members (2015), and related industry segments such as tourism, packaging, transport or agriculture. In addition, in the ecosystem approach the supporting services are seen as very important.

In the centre of Figure 12 there are the food companies. South Australian food value chains incorporate a number of types of companies, such as incumbent corporates with large scale capital investments in product development, co-operative entities providing core services to producers to enable products to be transformed into a marketable state, and lots of small and medium size companies manufacturing and developing new products, or supporting other companies to take the various products to market.

The value chain actors and ecosystem elements surround the companies and form the dynamic, interactive network that breeds value adding and innovation. Successful innovation requires a special ecosystem that includes top level universities and research institutions, sufficient financing and a local market, a skilled labour force, and specialisation as well as cooperation among companies and global networking (Oksanen & Hautamäki, 2014).

This kind of ecosystem requires the development of world class innovation hubs where a high quality of life and excellent business possibilities are combined. It is part of regional development, which is shifting towards large clusters, cities, and metropolitan areas, while most of the value creation, research and development activities, and patenting, happen in the global-level innovation hubs.

Such a hub can be built through deep cooperation among local and national actors. However, even if innovation tends to cluster in certain sectors or areas which grow, in reality relatively few regions have exhibited this kind of renewal capability (Etzkowitz & Klofsten, 2005). For smaller regions and urban areas, it is essential to identify and support the full innovation potential of the area, especially in times of structural changes such as the ceasing of the Australian automotive manufacturing industry.
The innovation ecosystem can be evaluated by analysing the current status of the public policy driven activities, public-private partnerships, and company and forum driven activities in comparison to global best practice environments (see e.g. Launonen & Viitanen, 2011). The overall starting point for South Australia is quite good, with a lot of ecosystem assets and strengths that need to be fully recognised and utilised—food is among the already identified industries that have a lot of potential.

**Table 10. Examples of supporting actors in SA food business ecosystem.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Supporting organisations</th>
<th>Market intelligence, branding, exporting etc.</th>
<th>Business &amp; Finance</th>
<th>Industry associations and others</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Research, innovation and food technology</td>
<td>Baker Marketing, Feeney Marketing, Makrid Preiss &amp; Associates, SODS Group, The Write Alternative, KS Design Studio, Detour Design, Austrade, DSD and other local and national supporters and market intelligence providers, Council for International Trade and Commerce SA.</td>
<td>Hayes Knight, Mayfair Finance, National Australia Bank, Baker Marketing, Makrid Preiss and Associates, Feeney Marketing, HACCPtown, the Government of South Australia, Australian Tax Office business help, Business Licence Information (BLIS), IP Australia.</td>
<td>Food South Australia, SAWIA, PP5A, Dairy SA, SAOGA, SANFA, SA Beef, SA Poultry, SA Tourism, and a variety of other smaller, bottom-up associations such as Cheese SA by Woodside Cheese, Berry Growers SA, Fleurieu Peninsula Food, Organic &amp; BioDynamic Alliance, Rare Fruit Society etc., national organisations such as Wine Australia, Australian Olive Association, NASAA.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The opportunity landscape

The term ‘opportunity landscape’ refers to information available to decision-makers in order to anticipate future developments, to act accordingly, and to aid SMEs in particular in keeping up to date with change (see e.g. Savioz & Blum, 2002). It is supported by the elements of PESTLE analysis (P for Political, E for Economic, S for Socio-cultural, T for Technological, L for Legal and E for Environmental), which is an orienteering tool and a framework for understanding the markets from many different angles. The outcome of PESTLE is an understanding of the macro level forces surrounding the industry (see also Table 5).

During the research phase of this project, a review of the current situation showed several recurring themes driving the future value adding activities of the South Australian food industry. The opportunity landscape is presented following these thematic areas.

The opportunity lists presented are neither exhaustive nor exclusive but, depending on the case, some aspects will prove to be more important, while others will be less important. Considering the different opportunities allows for clear implications for new value formation. Figure 13 portrays the opportunity landscape as a whole.
The identified opportunities for the food industry to add value to the luxury and functional food value chains have been divided into primary opportunities (Figure 14), and enabling opportunities (Figure 15). The primary opportunities are directly related to food, ingredients, origin, image and experience that functional and luxury food from South Australia could create. More information on the functional and luxury products can be found in the Functional and Luxury Project Literature Review.

Figure 14. Primary opportunities in luxury and functional food value chains.
The primary opportunities focus on recognition and utilisation of the specialities and resources of the region, and development of products by matching South Australian capabilities with the needs in the target markets. The enabling opportunities are seen as opportunities that support the value adding actions and the food industry development, and strengthen the capabilities of the South Australian food companies.

**Food innovation and technology**

The interviews undertaken for this project revealed that many food companies in South Australia are interested in benefitting more from the latest food technology development and innovation. However, even the leading companies stressed that more support is needed in order to fully utilise new technology and innovations related to food production.

Generally, companies are somewhat interested in increasing the amount of research and development, product development and technology, and in utilising outside research and development knowledge, but only when feasible. Both limited funds and limited local know-how restrict the spreading of new food technologies and innovations.

There is some food technology education in the local universities (both University of South Australia and University of Adelaide have combined food and nutrition sciences programs at the Bachelor level, but not at higher levels), and closer links should be fostered with national and international research providers. For example, the Australian Research Council (ARC) has awarded more funding to promote industry-university linkages and is currently running an Industrial Transformation Research Program (ITRP) in which food and agriculture is one of the chosen topics for the year 2015, with a special focus on areas such as dairy innovation, lock lobsters, value chains and ASEAN markets (see ARC, [http://www.arc.gov.au/](http://www.arc.gov.au/)).

More research is needed, for example in utilising science and technology in nutrition, in tailoring the food matrix with enzymes and microbes, and in improving the healthiness of foods. In addition, innovations in minimal processing, minimal waste, and functional foods can save on both costs and resources.

The interviews indicated that there is a need to increase the absorptive capacity of food value chain actors. Absorptive capacity is seen as the ability of a company to recognise the value of new,
external information, assimilate it, and apply it to commercial ends to adapt new technologies (Cohen & Levithal, 1990). A long term approach in increasing the absorptive capacity of local companies could be achieved by investing in regional food technology education, and enhancing the assimilation of the latest food technology and innovation.

With the help of food innovation and technology, different groups with special nutritional needs can be better served. For example, the aging population is one of the quickest growing consumer groups all over the world. This progression is especially strong in Japan where the proportion of seniors in the population is the greatest among the OECD countries (OECD, 2014).

The amount of food eaten often diminishes along with aging, but there should be enough energy, protein, fibre and vitamins (especially vitamin D) even in small food portions. Enriching the nutrient content of a meal without increasing the portion size can be done, for example, by fortifying meals with good quality fibres (e.g. pea or oat fibre), protein concentrates and fats (Heiniö et al., 2014).

Seniors also consider the attributes of good food packaging to include being environmentally friendly and easy to open without tools (Heiniö et al., 2014); here, packaging development and innovation play crucial roles. Food innovation can also be social and inclusive; in South Australia, initiatives to improve the food served in regional aged care facilities has already proved successful (see the Maggie Beer Foundation, 2015).

### Packaging

Packaging is another field where technology and innovation are identified. The current state of the local packaging providers could be improved with new approaches to packaging.

A number of technologies are potentially available to address the food industry needs, including flexible modified atmospheric packaging (MAP), vacuum skin packaging, smart packaging and labelling, and sustainable packaging. Food packaging innovation targets extending product shelf life, enhancing consumer convenience, and ensuring product safety and sustainability. The VTT researchers argued that tamper-evident and tamper-resistant packaging innovations can provide a means to combat counterfeit products and unauthorised refills, and protect luxury food brand image in Asian markets. Sustainable packaging – meaning the development and use of packaging which results in improved sustainability – is another packaging trend to be noted; it suits well both the functional and luxury food production.

### Digitalisation

Digitalisation is likely to drive food industry (see e.g. Scott-Thomas, 2011). It will affect the whole value chain, starting from raw materials, product development, processing, packaging, logistics, distribution, marketing and sales (see also Ch. 3.4.8 E-commerce). Digitalisation helps to manage the enterprise more efficiently (e.g. PwC, 2011) (Figure 16), it creates market opportunities for food companies by connecting them with digitally empowered customers and by improving understanding of needs of consumers in emerging markets, and enables value chain transformation.
NOTE: More technology and innovation-related opportunities and information (e.g. 3D printing and biotechnologies) were identified and assessed during the strategic roadmapping exercise in Phase 2 of the project and are covered elsewhere in this Reference Report.

Branding and food experience

Branding is generally critical in luxury markets, with brand (either of a product or of a broader location) being critical to the symbolic aspects of luxury food consumption. As an interesting weak signal, there may be a branding opportunity for South Australia to position itself as the functional and/or luxury food region for Asia, given that this kind of branding is not extensively undertaken by any region currently.

Many regional branding activities are done with a category focus, such as in Bordeaux in France. Luxury foods are generally categorised as food that are scarce, painstakingly prepared, and of consistently high quality. These foods are often endorsed by high-end clientele and restaurants in different geographies that follow cultural cues, ethnicity, purchasing power parity, tastes, indulgence, habits and historical evolution of tastes of inhabitants of a particular country and have high perceived value (Som & Blanckaert, 2015).

Health and wellness gifts related to functional food and beverages, and luxury food gifts are a growing trend in Asia. The Literature Review has identified gift packs as a product opportunity, which resonates well with branding. South Australian producers could package and sell functional food containing health and wellness packs with the ‘made in Australia’ label to indicate quality, food safety and Australia’s history of medicinal plant use which is similar to that of China. However, a clear differentiation between packaging for functional food and luxury food gifts and brands is required.

Consumers of luxury products have higher disposable incomes, allowing them to spend relatively freely on non-essential food items. For example, growth of chocolate demand (fuelled by emerging consumer interest across Asia primarily China, Japan and India) is very high, especially in gifting, which promises growth in this higher margin sector.
Airport sales are another rapidly growing channel for luxury foods. As documented in the Functional and Luxury Project Literature Review, it is considered that there is an opportunity for South Australian producers to further exploit this channel, for example via South Australian luxury food outlets at major international airports.

PIRSA actively promotes the South Australian food and wine industry. The Premium Food and Wine from Clean Environment Strategy (see PIRSA, 2015), together with South Australia’s brand, is a good starting point for further promoting safe and sustainable luxury and functional food produced in South Australia. Opportunities can be exploited via differentiation and via further development of the South Australian brand towards designed and desired food experiences.

The luxury market has been noted as transforming from its traditional conspicuous consumption model to a new experiential luxury model (Wiedmann et al., 2007). For example, Bulgari and Baccarat are pursuing new business opportunities in the hospitality sector by opening hotels in locations such as Milan, London, New York and Bali, thus tapping into the growing experiential luxury market (Som and Pape, 2015).

Experienced entrepreneurs also create value through experiences and meanings related to food and beverages. The importance of experience and the meaning of products and services is widely recognised and examined within design thinking studies (see e.g. Verganti, 2009). The meaning components include elements such as economics (price, brand), environment (durability, sustainability), societal aspects (communality, ethical values), usability (quality, complexity) and personal aspects (experience, usefulness, life management), which convey new reasons for customers to use and buy things.

Entrepreneurs, researchers, technologists and artists are all interested in understanding and interpreting possible future environments and habits. In practice, food producers may integrate social and psychological knowledge into their expertise, or firms can integrate anthropologists or artists into their teams.

It is also argued that the most valued experience building requires understanding of societal, cultural and technological changes and their implications (Hautamäki & Oksanen, 2015). The required knowledge about the dynamics of social and cultural models is often a tacit knowledge; it cannot be easily found in books or reports or foresighted by building forward-looking scenarios. This dynamic consists of numerous unpredictable interactions between different actors (companies, users, designers, media, schools, researchers, artists and so on). In this context, food innovators need to utilise the notion that they are also in a network that constantly reflects different meanings from other industries, societal groups and individuals.

Food tourism

Food tourism is closely linked to the branding and food experience examined above. Food tourism is a growing market, comprising travellers seeking the authenticity of the places they visit through food.

The existing Eat Local SA initiative for consumers and premium wine and food tours serve as a good basis for further development of South Australian food tourism and promotion of South Australia as the luxury food region. Enhanced promotion of South Australia as a luxury food destination could expand the inbound tourism opportunity. The romanticism of having visited vineyards, cheese production facilities, and mushroom growing areas is an important part in the food experience for travellers. For example, the Central Market in Adelaide is a food tourism asset visited by hundreds of thousands of tourists every year; the facilitation of capabilities of different regions of South Australia could be similarly strengthened. Adelaide Farmers’ Market at the Wayville Showgrounds has been
voted the best farmer’s market in Australia by Australian Traveller and the Barossa Farmer’s Market is also in the top-10\(^2\).

South Australia has potential to expand its positioning as a luxury food tourism location, but this requires a range of initiatives, including unified definitions for products, stronger understanding and utilisation of the cultural heritage, co-operation of industry stakeholders (producers, hotels, travel agents etc.), and ensuring the sustainability and the maintenance of high quality services and products.

A potential option could be to enhance the existing Wine Centre (and other centres) into an expanded luxury food centre, with a goal of developing South Australia as a luxury food region. In addition, targeted marketing efforts, including activities in social media (e.g. food blogs and food travel blogs), could bring visibility, facilitate brand enhancement, and promote South Australian luxury food as desired experiences.

**Collaboration**

PIRSA and Food South Australia have been identified as key players for promoting collaboration and networking within South Australian food industry actors. Currently there exists some ‘pockets’ of collaboration, and generally the companies and other industry actors are well networked, although small companies could benefit from more collaboration in export, marketing activities, brand building, and promotion. However, without systemic support and guidance, the collaboration activities remain occasional and coincidental. More support for partnership building and for establishing international connections would lower barriers and risks for SMEs to enter and succeed in Asian markets.

For example, the oyster industry is primarily comprised of small businesses that are wholly dependent on export (e.g. ABARE-BRS, 2010). However, despite the dominant position for premium wild-caught product, the companies maintain very little control over marketing variables in their key markets in Asia. This, along with a rapid appreciation of the Australian dollar has negatively affected the industry’s profitability. It is claimed that without a significant cooperative response to these challenges, the survival of many of these exporters, along with the industry’s economic and social contribution to Australia is in jeopardy (see Manning & Freeman, 2011).

More recently some collective actions have been taken in order to succeed and capitalise in the new Asian markets: for example, Australia’s Oyster Coast collective is focusing its resources to sell the Sydney rock oyster to Asian markets (Becker, 2015).

Collaboration along the value chain is generally seen as beneficial, and the benefits of collaborative value chains outweigh the costs, but the latter are not insignificant. Costs (of money and time) are often perceived as prohibitive by value chain actors. The biggest cost associated with building collaborative value chains is management time – generating the trust and goodwill necessary to integrate key business processes in order to reduce costs takes time, and results in a degree of interdependency with which many feel uncomfortable, and about which those outside of these collaborative value chains remain sceptical (see Fearne, 2009).

**Market understanding**

The company interviews indicated that there is a need for improving the readiness to enter Asian markets.

\(^2\) http://www.australiantraveller.com/australia/australias-10-best-farmers-markets/#
Opportunities here lie in spreading and utilising the existing knowledge within the value network – some of the most innovative companies emphasised that the most important benefits and learnings they have got from the more experienced industry actors and business mentors. In practice, it means increasing market intelligence, that is, by improving the understanding of a diverse range of current and potential customers (demographics, needs, habits, culture, etc.). In addition, a stronger focus on target marketing based on one or a few key segments could prove to be beneficial. For example, demographic marketing provides opportunities for functional foods, as there are growing demands for child specific and geriatric specific nutrition based on the demographics of the target countries.

Besides market understanding, market adaptation such as ‘easternisation’ of functional food offerings is proposed as an opportunity to South Australia. The most successful companies have already understood the requirements of individualising markets: adaptability and local knowledge and presence in the each market (Porter, 2014).

E-commerce
Online sales and home shopping are quickly becoming the distribution mode of choice in Asia due to consumers’ ability to make informed decisions and compare prices. Some South Australian food companies already have online stores but, especially in luxury foods, there are opportunities for South Australian producers to increase online sales, for example through opening e-commerce sites on Tmall, China’s largest merchant e-commerce site and one used by many overseas vendors.

The success of ventures such as Net-A-Porter has shown that consumers are willing to buy luxury products online, and at undiscounted prices (Dauriz et al., 2014). Along with online sales, social media shows strong potential in luxury business and online advertising. For example, Instagram offers brands new advertising options, such as ways to expand the brands’ ability to convey a richer and more detailed story, or integrate bottom-of-funnel communications (Sorin, 2015).

Internet retailers have proven the case for selling luxury online, working creatively to overcome the limitations traditionally associated with retailing designer fashion – sizing, fit and feel to name a few (see e.g. the Luxury Society, 2012). Online food commerce is different from other luxury products, and presents some new challenges such as tasting. The fine wine industry still lacks unified and global e-commerce platforms. However, regardless of the challenges, online retailing is changing food and beverage trading, and the industry actors need to be prepared for the change.

Entrepreneurial attitude
Finally, entrepreneurial attitude is identified as the key enabler for benefitting from the opportunities.

The company interviews presented a somewhat positive, but still emergent, entrepreneurial attitude among the South Australian food industry. Developing and encouraging an entrepreneurial mindset and promoting inspiring and local success stories in global channels (blogs, articles in business and lifestyle magazines, video clips etc.) could further improve the visibility of the South Australian brand and companies.

Entrepreneurial attitude arises from the will to improve the current situation: many of the interviewed companies demonstrated satisfaction with their current profit and situation, sometimes resulting in a reluctance to grow and take new risks – to enhance the entrepreneurial mindset, the companies’ willingness to explore new horizons need to the strengthened. The more innovative companies emphasised the importance of risky pursuits and experiments for success.
Overall, a few skills that are related to strengthening the entrepreneurial spirit can be identified (see Llopis, 2013): these are broadening the observations beyond obvious details before you (for example, towards food exports to new countries with products not currently produced in South Australia) and simultaneously cultivating the most promising opportunities by giving them the right amount of focus and attention (choosing focus areas and prioritising them in terms of funding and other resources, and in turn not wasting energy on opportunities with limited potential).
Target Markets: Actors and Issues

Phase 1 of the project identified key target market actors in Asia and in relation to the identified opportunity areas. This activity was based on publicly available sources, company website information and market intelligence data.

The most important export targets for South Australian food industry include six countries (with Hong Kong classed separately from China):

- China (luxury and functional)
- Hong Kong (luxury and functional)
- Singapore (luxury and functional)
- Japan (luxury and functional)
- Malaysia (luxury and functional)
- South Korea (luxury and functional)

These countries are identified as the immediate priorities for South Australia for both functional and luxury foods.

The immediate country market opportunities were identified based on the following analysis:

- For luxury foods, opportunities are currently most significant in countries where the predominant culture emphasises luxury food consumption as an indicator of social status, and where there are relatively large numbers of high net worth individuals and a significant power distance index.
- These countries have the largest current markets for luxury products and functional foods. For example, Hong Kong, although a much smaller market in population terms, has a significantly larger luxury market than India or Indonesia.
- For functional foods, demographic factors such as a significantly aging population, as well as rapidly growing health expenditure, are more evident in these countries.

Other countries, such as India, Indonesia and Vietnam, are rated as lower priorities (although still with potential). This does not mean that these markets are necessarily inappropriate for South Australia, but that they are of lower priority, given the need for focus.
Pathways for Future Growth

This component of the study was undertaken in Phase 3. The future pathways aim at focusing on specific growth opportunities for the local industry through adding value [for detail on the approach to this component of the study, see also Methodology].

Potentially, the most interesting pathways should be the ones where a shared opportunity beyond a single business can be identified. Each pathway should work towards a vision of exploiting an identified business opportunity, and the necessary steps to achieve that vision. Such steps may include development of local specialised capabilities such as business networks, innovation, technology, research, education, and infrastructure, as well as policy activities (regulation, public research and development support, procurement, standardisation, certification schemes, promotion of exports and investments etc.).

*Figure 17. Future pathways design for project group work.*

This component of the research project aimed to highlight the general premises and facts behind the suggested pathways, such as:

- background
- needs and requirements
- potential customers and markets
- required capabilities and competencies
- key enabling technologies
- required infrastructure and ecosystem
- key companies in the field

The five pathways originally suggested to workshop participants are shown in Table 11.

*Table 11. Five suggested pathways for functional and luxury foods in South Australia.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Possible pathways for functional and luxury food</th>
<th>Possible steps</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pathway 1: Food technology upgrading</td>
<td>Short term</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mid-term</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adoption of commercially available processing</td>
<td>Long term</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>technology</td>
<td>Attraction of technology manufacturers in South Australia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Food technology development in South Australia</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Each group was invited to discuss their selected pathway and, if needed, to refocus it. They were also asked to formulate a vision for the pathway, and to think about how South Australia’s food and wine industry should look when the pathway is fully realised. Finally, participants were asked to identify the steps to be taken to realise that vision, plotting the steps on a timeline and identifying the activities local actors could undertake to achieve the vision.

The outcomes of the group work, as presented below, were then used in outlining the future pathways in more detail (see Final Report for completed pathways).
Pathway 1: Food technology upgrading

Figure 18. Group work output for pathway 1 - Food technology upgrading.

Pathway 1: Food Technology Adoption

Vision: SA reputation for innovation across whole supply chain – Like attracts like

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Short term 0-1 yr</th>
<th>Midterm 1-3 yrs</th>
<th>Long term 3 + yrs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Inspire through demonstration: “Inspire me”</td>
<td>“I’m inspired”, “I’m changing”</td>
<td>“I’ll be a change maker” + An early adopter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Identify manufacturers of food tech equipment suppliers (show us: youtube videos, case studies etc.)</td>
<td>• Appoint “Go to people” – who point in right direction – “in a one stop shop”</td>
<td>• Continual improvement &amp; innovation to stay ahead of the game</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• International food tech capability mapping – exploring possibilities with SA food manufacturers</td>
<td>• Continue Business Transformation Voucher within food industry</td>
<td>• Attract technology machine suppliers reps to Adelaide on a regular basis so we can stay we can stay in touch with new + uptake early</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Able to outsource help to work out financial business case of adopting and investing into technology</td>
<td>• Government: change funding cycles (for co-investment + de-risking”)</td>
<td>• Partner business with appropriate researcher and/or technology provider to create new tech</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• SA government working with food industry to determine what’s needed</td>
<td></td>
<td>• Reputation as industry leaders in innovation and early adoption</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Clear economic incentives to innovate i.e. R&amp;D tax concessions</td>
<td></td>
<td>• Attracting business in food to get in SA due to reputation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Like attracts like – build the international desire/attraction to SA</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Background

Adoption of new processing technology has the potential to increase productivity of the business and improve quality of the products, extend shelf life, and improve product safety. The technological capability within South Australian food industry is generally considered low in international comparison. Partly this is due to the small average size of the firms.

Most of the food technology suppliers are global players. Local industry is very limited. Some key global suppliers have representation in Australia, but most of their activities are related to marketing and sales.

General needs and requirements

To upgrade food technology in South Australia requires demonstrating the benefits of technology adoption to food businesses. As many businesses currently view technology uptake as a cost rather than an investment with potentially high return (ROI) there is a need for awareness building activities for demonstrating these benefits. This includes identifying potential technologies for any individual firm and helping in assessing the required size of the investment and the expected payback time for various production parameters (volumes etc.).

The easiest option is the adoption of commercially available food processing technologies to improve quality of products and productivity of the business. More effort is needed to attract technology manufacturers to establish presence in South Australia by building up a significant demand base for advanced food technology.
It is critical to develop capacities in utilising available technologies for payment and transactions. The technological solutions include e-commerce solutions such as mobile commerce, electronic funds transfer, and online transaction processing. This would also include integrating with the channel to market, for example for the retailers who use different systems between the different channels.

Needs for food technology development
The competence base needs to be improved to trigger food technology development activities in South Australia by building up a demand base of a group of sophisticated customers and a world-class ecosystem of supporting activities.

As any locally operating food company alone (due to their relatively small size) is not likely to attract global suppliers to establish development activities in South Australia, there is a need to concentrate innovation activities under one roof to reach sufficient scale. A food innovation centre with applied research capability and innovation programs of significant scale could serve as a hub for aggregating and leveraging fragmented technology and product development efforts. As such, it would also serve as an attraction point for collaboration with global technology suppliers.

- Technology adoption of more advanced (widely applicable) food processing technologies, such as HPP, PEF, industrial scale microwave, and 3D printing. There are also a multitude of food sector specific equipment needs that were not included in discussion for in this project. These typically involve equipment that can used to replace manual labour such as conveyor belt systems, cutters, different kinds of robots and packing machines.

- In the case that a decision is made to start the production of functional ingredients in South Australia (instead of buying them): upgrading the capabilities in technologies related to functional ingredients, particularly extraction technologies, such as:
  - Traditional solvent extraction (including solid-liquid extraction, SLE), pressurized liquid extraction, subcritical fluid extraction, supercritical fluid extraction; pulsed electric field extraction, microwave-/ultrasonic-/enzyme assisted extraction, and instant controlled pressure drop-assisted extraction. Typically there are optional ways for the extraction of the ingredient. The method of choice depends on the specific ingredient (and the purity needed), raw material to be used, and production volumes. For instance, a panel of extraction techniques have been used to isolate phenolic compounds from the wine-making residues. Although the most widespread technique used to extract the (poly)phenolics from winery residues is currently SLE, other techniques such supercritical fluids extraction (SFE), ultrasound assisted extractions (UAE), microwave assisted extractions (MAE), and high pressure and temperature extraction (HPTE) can also be successfully used on phenolic extraction (Teixeira et al. 2014).
  - Dry fractionation technologies for enrichment of protein, starch and dietary fibres; air classification can be used for high-protein ingredients (Pelgrom 2015) and high-fibre ingredients, especially beta-glucan (Sibakov 2014). In addition, electrostatic separation can be utilised to further enrich fibres from oats and wheat (Hemery et al 2011; Sibakov 2014). Industrial scale equipment for air classification is available from Hosokawa Alpine AG\textsuperscript{30} and for electrostatic separation from Bühler AG\textsuperscript{31}.

\textsuperscript{30}https://www.hosokawa-alpine.com/powder-particle-processing/machines/classifiers-and-air-classifiers/
• Besides wet extraction and dry fractionation technologies ultra- and nanofiltration and chromatographic and electrophoretic techniques are used in the production of functional ingredients. Dairy industry uses ultra- and nanofiltration for milk and whey protein concentration, and nanofiltration for lactose concentration of the ultrafiltration permeate\(^3\) (Kumar et al. 2013).

Starting ingredient manufacturing in South Australia is a separate challenge. Few food companies (typically only the big players) produce the functional ingredients they use themselves (some dairy companies can produce the probiotics they use and some cereal companies (with both mills and bakeries) can produce the fibre ingredients). Instead, this is typically a highly specialised branch of the industry. To set up an ingredient factory, highly specialised equipment is needed (some of these are mentioned above). In addition:

• Existing ingredient competition (local/global) needs to be considered
• For new ingredients, there will not be an existing market and therefore risks are high
• Also, with new ingredients there is typically no, or low, know-how related to production, which means that production start-up may be slow (however, if successful and if the company owns the IPR, also the benefits can high)

Due to their relatively small size, a locally operating food company on their own is not likely to attract global suppliers to establish development activities in South Australia. There is a need to concentrate innovation activities under one roof to reach sufficient scale. A regional centre for innovation with applied research capability and innovation programs of significant scale could serve as a hub for aggregating and leveraging fragmented technology and product development efforts. As such, it would also serve as an attraction point for collaboration with global technology suppliers. In a regional centre of food innovation and research, the main focus should be on piloting and scaling up production currently realised in the laboratory phase. The centre should be targeted to the commercialisation and utilisation of innovations, and the research should endorse this target. The centre could be set up in three stages (See Figure 19).

\(^3\) http://advanceddairytech.com/nanofiltration.php
Launch stage

In the launch stage (1-2 years duration) the basic functions of the centre are built. The first step would be to build up a detailed regional strategy for food research and innovation with the key actors. These actors should represent all the relevant stakeholders in a triple helix mode (research, industry, government) or in a ‘quadruple helix’ mode (research, industry, government, citizens including NGOs).

The second step would be to start up a benchmarking of global best practices in the relevant domains defined in the strategy. Benchmarking should be an ongoing practice that is reviewed at regular intervals.

The third step would be to build an initial research capacity. This includes hiring key personnel and setting an operational plan to integrate relevant local researchers under the auspices of the centre.

The fourth step in the launch stage should be to start continuous information sharing workshops between researchers and local industry. At first, these workshops could be more about finding a common ground and common agenda, but already in the in the set-up stage the discussion could be informing participants about research results and new industry needs.

---

**Figure 19. Functions of a regional centre of food innovation and research: a stylised overview.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Building a detailed regional strategy with the key actors</th>
<th>Implementing the strategy</th>
<th>Checking and re-directing the strategy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Benchmarking of global best practices in relevant fields</td>
<td>Continuous information sharing workshops between research and industry</td>
<td>Pilot: new technologies, innovative practices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Demonstration exhibits of technology providers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Specialised equipment provision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Training for local companies and actors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Incubator and start-up support functions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Building a research capacity</td>
<td>Applied research in selected topics</td>
<td>Research provides direct benefits for local actors</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**LAUNCH STAGE:** 1-2 years  
**SET-UP STAGE:** 2-3 years  
**FULL-SCALE ACTIVITIES:** 4-5 years
The fifth step in the launch phase would be to start piloting projects that are defined in the regional strategy. Piloting projects could be, for example, topics such as adoption of novel production technologies and testing out new industry practices. These piloting projects could be combined with simultaneous demonstration exhibits by the technology providers.

**Set up stage**

In the set-up stage (2-3 years duration) the focus of the centre should be in implementing the regional strategy. All the steps started in the launch stage would be established and becoming regular practices in the centre.

There would also be new steps in the set-up stage. Firstly, there would be a need for applied research programmes in the relevant fields, as shown by the strategy. Secondly, the centre should start its specialised equipment provision for the local SMEs. Basically this means that centre would acquire new or cheaper used instruments and would rent the use time for the industry. The renting would include the training of the basic functions of the instruments, and the searching for the specific time for the companies to use the devices.

Thirdly, the centre should start training sessions for the local companies and actors. The training topics would be initially outlined by the strategy, but also research and industry workshops could be used to steer the contents of the training.

Fourthly, the centre should begin setting up a start-up incubator and also start-up support functions. In the long run, the aim of the centre should not just be to direct already existing industry, but to catalyse the formation of new technology-based high value-adding companies.

**Full scale activity**

In the third stage of full-scale activities (in 4-5 years) all the above mentioned steps should be, more or less, in full utilisation. The applied research would already be providing some direct benefits for the local companies, and all the other activities would supporting the development of a new company culture in the South Australian food sector. In some 4-5 years, the regional strategy should also be re-checked and aligned with changes in local and global operational environments.

**Potential customers and markets**

Industry development along this food technology upgrading pathway would support capacity building for the whole food industry, improving its productivity and consistency of quality. Thus, it would support also functional foods and luxury foods, but is not limited to the industry players active in these domains.

Acquisition of new equipment that would enable the production of higher quantities/volumes of food of even/good quality without additional personnel would be an obvious route to follow. This kind of approach would benefit especially the functional food industry; luxury foods tend to more artisanal (although consistent and superior quality is needed for them as well).

The non-thermal preservation technologies especially have diverse application fields in the food industry. They enable improvement of the quality of the foods (both microbiological and sensory) and can increase the shelf life of perishable products. Increased shelf life is especially important for export markets.

Across the Australian food industry, the pathway for supporting capacity building varies from large business through to small businesses. Most large businesses, whilst they might have access to
capital, are limited by manufacturing constraints due to technologies already in place and reliance on manufacturing large volumes of product. This can inhibit large organisations from investing frequently and the investments tend to be more strategic, being around key growth priorities into which the business is willing to move.

Whilst small businesses are more nimble and can be highly flexible, for example in implementing new technologies, they can have limited access to financial capital to acquire new technology or upgrade existing equipment.

The luxury segment in the food industry is still very new. Whilst premium or super premium categories have forged ahead in sectors such as wine, red meat, and ice cream, the Australian consumer is still not prepared to pay for luxury foods. Functional ingredients have definitely had a wider impact across a number of categories, in particular in dairy, where it is easier for the consumer to understand the functional benefits of ingredients in foods such as yoghurt (such as for gut health etc.)

A pathway whereby functional ingredients are produced will be very different. For functional ingredients, customers outside South Australia are needed. Typically, ingredient markets are global, therefore global competition and markets need to be analysed carefully.

Different functional ingredients have different limitations in terms of how these can be incorporated into functional foods without compromising the activity/bioavailability of the compound and the sensory properties of the food. The ingredient industry has to meet this need and ensure ingredients are easy to incorporate and as neutral as possible (for example, in colour/taste) to be useful to the food industry.

Required capabilities and competencies
Because different food industries have very different needs in terms of food processing equipment and technologies, the required capabilities and competencies vary greatly. Many branches of the food industry (dairies, breweries, beverage manufacturers, non-artisinal bakeries) typically produce high volumes of food and are often already highly automated.

For these industries new technologies would probably replace some existing processes. New competencies needed would be related to the use of specific new equipment/processes. In these cases, the equipment manufacturer trains the staff. To help industries understand which technologies to implement, collaboration with equipment manufacturers and research institutes with food pilot facilities would be very beneficial.

Small companies have very different challenges. Due to the small size of these companies, they often have only basic or essential equipment. Any kind of know-how related to the use of new equipment needed is usually easily available from the equipment manufacturer. Here, the challenges relate to the investment itself and implementation of the equipment (for example, finding suitable space for the equipment). Small companies would greatly benefit from the approach described below for the clinic activities.

Relevant activities would include definition of specific industry needs, identification of relevant technologies worldwide, introducing technology suppliers to food and beverage companies and facilitation of technology adoption activities.

As stated above, ingredient manufacturing is typically a highly specialised industrial field. In many ways it is more similar to the pharmaceutical/chemical industry than to the food industry. The required capabilities and competencies are product-specific and personnel are usually trained in-
In the case of new equipment, this training would be in collaboration with the equipment manufacturer.

In South Australia, peer learning seems to be common among wineries (based on the industry interviews). This is a highly recommended method of learning, since very specific problems can be solved this way. This type of learning works probably best for small and medium sized companies who know each other well and have probably already worked together in other areas (e.g. joint export efforts).

Key enabling technologies
There are a large variety of relevant enabling technologies commercially available in the market, most of them provided by global suppliers. According to the technology analysis conducted in this project, the most promising general technologies to be used for processing of a variety of food materials are cold pasteurisation (non-thermal preservation) technologies, high pressure processing (HPP) and pulsed electric field (PEF). A diverse range of other technologies is also available, whose application is pertinent to specific categories of food and beverages. Since the specific needs of different food industries are so varied, only the general/widely applicable technologies can be considered here. Examples of the different technologies and their application fields are given above.

HPP and PEF are both efficient alternatives for thermal pasteurisation in terms of microbial inactivation. Both technologies inactivate vegetative microbial cells and many enzymes at ambient temperature conditions, resulting in a high retention of the nutritional and sensory characteristics of the fresh products. Thus these technologies are suitable for heat sensitive food materials. Products processed with such technologies are often sold at a premium price (Saldana et al., 2014, Sampedro et al., 2014, Jermann et al., 2015).

HPP is used to treat a wide variety of packaged foods such as meat products, avocado products (and other dips and salsas), fruit products, ready to eat meals, seafood products, juices, and dairy products33 (Balasubramaniam et al. 2015). PEF is typically used to treat liquid foods such as fresh and fermented dairy products, and juices34 but it has also other applications such as to treat peeled potato cuts35 (Odriozola-Serrano, et al. 2013).

Jermann et al. (2015) conducted two independently designed surveys of a North American (Survey 1) and a European group (Survey 2). The respondents were food professionals from industry, academia and government. The questions sought to identify novel technologies either applied now or with the potential to be commercialised in 5–10 years, commercialisation factors, associated regulations and limitations.

In Survey 1, HPP (80%), microwave (88%) and UV (84%) were the main technologies applied now and anticipated in the next five years. PEF was third instead of UV in Survey 2. The main drivers were higher quality products (94%), product safety (92%) and shelf life (91%). HPP and microwaves were identified as main technologies now and in the next 10 years. There were geographical differences, with North America finding UV and radiation, and Europe finding PEF of more importance now. Cold

33 http://www.hiperbaric.com/en/applications
35 http://www.pulsemaster.us/pulsemaster-introduces-new-generation-pef-technology-potato-processing
plasma and PEF were anticipated to be more important in Europe in 10 years' time while HPP, microwave and UV remained more important to North America. PEF is more popular in Europe, especially the Netherlands, where a commercial scale unit exists (for example, Pulsemaster B.V. delivers equipment up to 5000 l/h capacity for the microbial inactivation of liquids\textsuperscript{36}.

**Limitations of HPP and PEF – effect on quality-degrading enzymes**

The effectiveness of HPP and PEF for controlling quality-degrading enzymes in food product varies, depending on the origin of enzymes as well as on the environment in the food product. For example, polyphenol oxidase (PPO), peroxidase (POD), and pectin methylesterase (PME) are highly resistant to HPP and are at most partially inactivated under commercially feasible conditions. Polygalacturonase (PG) and lipoxygenase (LOX), on the other hand, are relatively more pressure sensitive and can be substantially inactivated by HPP at commercially feasible conditions (Terefe et al. 2014).

PEF can result in substantial inactivation of most enzymes, although a much more intense process is required compared to microbial inactivation. Depending on the processing condition and the origin of the enzyme, up to 97% inactivation of pectin methylesterase, polyphenol oxidase, and peroxidase as well as no inactivation have been reported following PEF treatment (Terefe et al. 2015).

**Processing costs of HPP and PEF vs. thermal pasteurization**

Sampedro et al. (2014) estimated the cost of HPP and the environmental impact of PEF, HPP and thermal pasteurization of orange juice in the US. The cost analysis was based on commercial processing conditions that were validated for a two month shelf life of orange juice under refrigeration conditions. Total electricity consumption was estimated to be 38,100 and 1,000,000 kWh/year for thermal and HPP processing, respectively. The total pasteurisation cost of HPP was estimated to be 10.7 c/l for processing 16,500,000 l/year (3,000 l/h). The total HPP cost was seven fold higher than that of conventional thermal processing (1.5 c/l). PEF treatment (3.0 c/l with around 5,000l/h capacity) was cheaper compared to HPP, but still double compared to thermal pasteurisation. The equivalent CO\textsubscript{2} emission was 90,000 kg for thermal processing and 700,000 and 773,000 kg for PEF and HPP, respectively. This corresponds to an increase of between 7- and 8-fold in comparison to the thermal processing. The authors concluded that despite the cooling requirements being lower in PEF and HPP, the non-thermal processes still generate more equivalent CO\textsubscript{2} emissions than thermal pasteurisation due to the higher electricity consumption.

Based on a sensitivity analysis (Sampedro et al. 2014), increasing the production output by two to six fold would reduce the total production costs of non-thermal processing by 43–75%. In the case of the PEF system, doubling the production size (from 1,000 to 2,000 l/h) reduced the total costs by nearly 50%, whereas an increase of three and five fold (from 1,000 to 3,000 and 5,000 l/h) reduced the overall costs 60 and 75%, respectively. In the case of the HPP system, an increase in production size of two, four and six-fold (from 500 to 1,000, 2,000 and 3,000 l/h) reduced the overall costs by 43–72. This could be accomplished by reducing the cycle time or increasing the vessel filling ratio by a better package design in the HPP system.

**Other food technologies and their potential in South Australia**

Another step is to assess other commercially available technologies for the specific context of South Australia food industry. Examples of these include large-scale microwave treatment (for thermal food processing) and UV pasteurisation.

\textsuperscript{36} http://www.pulsemaster.us/pef-machinery
Microwave (MW) systems of 2450 and 915 MHz and between 10 to 200 kW heating capacities are used in the food industry for precooking bacons (e.g., in Subway’s restaurants), tempering deep frozen meats when making meat patties, and precooking many other foods products. Commercial systems performing microwave pasteurisation and/or sterilisation of foods are currently available in Europe (e.g. TOP’s Foods). The advantage of microwave treatment is reduction in thermal processing time, which enables retaining the visual appeal and nutrients. It is also instantaneous and enables post packaging treatment\(^\text{37}\). Costs for the MW-unit are difficult to estimate. Approximately 6500 kW power (or maybe a bit less) would be required. Looking only at costs for small MW-equipment as a basic for calculation, VTT calculated 1000 € for 1 kW, this would lead to 6.5 million €. Of course such a big MW installation would have much lower costs, but this is very difficult to estimate (maybe around 2–3 million €).

The use of UV pasteurisation is limited to the brewing and beverage industry, where it can be efficiently used to lower microbial loads of both water/ingredients and equipment\(^\text{38}\). Sampedro et al. (2014) estimated that the costs of conventional thermal processing at around 1.5 ¢/l. Another pasteurisation technology is cold plasma, which is however not yet in industrial use. Potentially it could be used to disinfect surfaces in equipment, packaging, food contact surfaces or even food itself\(^\text{39}\). It has, for example, been used to lower the microbial load on the surface of (small) food products such as strawberries (Misra et al. 2014).

There is an interesting opportunity to explore possibilities from novel food-related technologies such as 3D printing. There are two main ways to use 3D printing; either it used to produce individually shaped pieces of food (typically chocolates, but could be other confectionery materials that can be extruded/injected). Another option is to produce tailored foods to consumer groups with specific needs. One example is easy to swallow foods for elderly people and people with dysphagia\(^\text{40, 41}\). Using 3D printing is only feasible in the context of low volume speciality foods. As this technology is still novel and its application in food industry is only experimental, its unit price as measured in traditional means is high. However, in the low volume speciality foods category interesting business opportunities could be found in the food service domain, in combination with other service activities (e.g. food printing in aged care facilities) in which case the high relative unit price is warranted as it contributes to higher overall service quality. The costs of 3D are difficult to estimate since the technology is currently fast developing.

**Required infrastructure and ecosystem**

Regional technology diffusion programs should be established to undertake the intermediation and promotion activities in the area food technology. The best outcome is achieved when the program (or a portfolio of programs) is flexible and can meet the different needs of the industry. Thus the programs can vary between fairly simple ones to a quite high level of sophistication depending on the need. Ideally, answering both immediate and longer term development needs of the industry (both small and large) should be possible. Short term programs should ensure solving existing

\(^{37}\) http://microwaveheating.wsu.edu/factsheet/index.html#applications  
\(^{38}\) http://www.aquafineuv.com/Portals/0/PDF_1/INDUSTRIES/FOOD%20&%20BEVERAGE/TSG%20090D-09%20Food%20%20Marketing%20Brief.pdf  
\(^{39}\) http://www.campdenbri.co.uk/research/cold-plasma.php  
\(^{40}\) http://theplate.nationalgeographic.com/2015/03/10/the-next-frontier-for-3-d-printers-is-healthy-food/  
\(^{41}\) http://techcrunch.com/2014/04/09/a-german-company-is-printing-food-for-the-elderly/
production related problems quickly whereas longer term programs would enable actual research and development work. Examples of different kind of activities are given below.

An example of a rapid targeted program to help food SMEs to solve their acute problems related to processing and hygiene were the Hygiene and Baking Clinic in Finland. In the Hygiene Clinic, SMEs could address specific food safety and hygiene-related problems in the form of small research projects (typically up to some weeks research work). Experts at VTT conducted the research and the company paid 50% of the costs. Tekes, the Finnish Funding Agency for Innovation\(^\text{42}\), provided the other 50% with minimal bureaucracy and paperwork.

The Hygiene Clinic offered services in hygiene investigation, consulting in auto-control systems, cleanability testing using pilot scale equipment, expertise in foodborne pathogens and spoiling organisms, application of rapid microbiological methods and testing of packages and packaging materials. The Hygiene Clinic was very successful and the same model was later applied for the Bakery Clinic, providing research and development services to small bakeries. These Clinics proved that there is a need to provide rapid answers/help for the acute problems in SMEs who are often unable to solve these problems themselves quickly enough.

An example of joint efforts within industry is PBL Brewing Laboratory (registered name Oy Panimalolaboratorio – Bryggerilaboratorium Ab). PBL is a company owned by the biggest players in the Finnish malting and brewing industry: Oy Sinebrychoff Ab, Oy Hartwall Ab, Olvi Oyj, Polttimo Oy and Laitilan Wirvoitusjouomatehdas. PBL offers top level expertise in the fields of malting, brewing and beverages for its shareholders to utilise in their own operations and innovations. Activities focus on scientific and pre-competitive, applied research\(^\text{43}\).

Each shareholder develops its own commercial applications outside the activities of PBL. The company coordinates and funds research activities that are mainly conducted at VTT, and utilises national and international research networks. This creates a critical mass that enables top level expertise and training, as well as active participation in international research and technology networks covering universities, research institutes and companies. In addition to its own funding, PBL applies for public funding for its projects. This kind of approach would be very useful when there are enough companies with enough uniformity in terms of production, equipment, competencies and personnel.

There are also successful examples of local collaborative activities in the food area (instead of sector specific activities). Foodwest (established in 1995) is owned by companies in the food industry and the towns and municipalities in Southern Ostrobothnia, Finland. Foodwest has offices in Seinäjoki and Tampere, and its customers are located all over Finland. Foodwest serves as a business partner to all kinds of food companies regardless of size, providing information and product development solutions and market expertise. They also coordinate projects, for example, the BSR Food Cluster Network is a project that helps small and medium-sized food producing companies in their international activities and efforts\(^\text{44}\).

Another model of enhancing industrial technology development is to utilise the services of companies in contract research and food innovation. One example is NIZO food research in the Netherlands. NIZO can provide a broad range of food grade production facilities, and a network of

\(^{42}\) http://www.tekes.fi/en/tekes/
\(^{44}\) http://www.foodwest.fi/en/company.html
research professionals, equipment suppliers and manufacturers\textsuperscript{45}. Since the customer has to pay all the costs related to work to be done (typically in the range of 100 000 – 200 000 €) these kinds of services are accessible to big companies only. There are a number of companies providing contract research globally; a critical issue here is the quality of their food pilots and contacts with equipment manufacturers.

A potential model for the permanent program in South Australia could be a public-private partnership approach where a relevant industry association would coordinate the programme (in the case of South Australia this would be Food South Australia). The State Government would provide financial support (through PIRSA), and private consultancies, relevant federal government organisations, or Regional Development Associations could be contracted to execute specific outreach tasks to implement relevant activities. The target companies should be required to co-fund some share of activities so as to assure necessary business engagement. The industrial funding level could depend on the size of the company and on the nature of the task (anywhere between 30-70%). In more general cases (more potential end-users) the fee could be lower to the participating companies.

Another model is an industry-led initiative whose finance is provided by industry itself and associated businesses. This approach, while it would ensure robust assessment of return on investment (ROI) on each technology adoption decision, risks providing little support to cultivation of learning between businesses, as any individual company would be likely to be reluctant to share information between the peers without external incentives.

Companies in the field
The target firms for technology adoption activities should be selected from those companies which have recognisable capabilities to migrate towards higher value-add products in the functional foods and luxury food categories, and are willing to grow their business beyond their present size. Interested companies could be identified by open calls and information sessions for interested parties.

Another key group to consider are the technology suppliers, most of which are to be found overseas. Examples of globally active technology providers in the food area include companies such as GEA, Bühler, Alfa Laval, Krones and Tetra Laval (DeLaval). Details of these companies’ activities are described in detail above in the ‘Technology Providers’ section of this report.

\textsuperscript{45} http://www.nizo.com/home/
Pathway 2: Ingredients for functional foods

Background

The foundation for any production of functional foods is the ingredients providing the enhanced functionality, and the processing technology for removing substances with undesired characteristics.

As analysed in Phase 1, the key opportunities in the functional food market for South Australia are driven by growing living standards, increasing health awareness, increasing healthcare expenditures, an aging population, and increased incidence of medical disorders such as metabolic syndrome. No functional food ingredients producers operating on an industrial scale were identified in South Australia during this study.

The opportunity analysis, realised in the Phase 1, identified the following functional ingredients as the primary opportunities in South Australia:

- poly-unsaturated fatty acids (PUFAs)
- proteins and peptides (e.g. from dairy)
- Vitamin D
- probiotics (health promoting microbes); prebiotic and other fibres (prebiotics are fibres that specifically promote the growth of certain gut microbes)
- aloe vera extract
- phytosterols
- carotenoids
- polyphenols
- indigenous plant extracts.
PUFAs can be found in a variety of products, including drinks, infant nutrition, cereals, etc. Proteins can be added into almost any type of food where an increase in protein content is desired, for example dairy, cereal bars and biscuits, and beverages. Only a small number of these products are actually functional (i.e. they deliver a health benefit); instead they are usually targeted to consumers interested in fitness. For health benefits, specific consumer groups and food products need to be targeted for protein and peptide supplementation (e.g. foods for infants and elderly, for bioactive peptides specific consumer groups (Madureira et al. 2010)). Vitamin D is typically added into dairy products, but it can be added e.g. into beverages as well. The use of probiotics (living microbes) is restricted to foods which are not heated, and which do not have too low pH (dairy products, fruit juices, and fermented cereals, vegetables and meats) (Saarela 2011). Vitamins, minerals and plant based ingredients (such as aloe vera, plant extracts) are typically used in beverages. Fibres are incorporated into various cereal products (bread, breakfast cold/ hot cereals, power bars) whereas prebiotics can be used more broadly (in cereals, dairy, confectionary, etc.) Phytosterols were initially introduced into spreads, but can today be found in a variety of products (dairy, juice, baked goods etc).

Another, very different, category within functional foods is ‘free-from’ products (mainly lactose-free and gluten-free). Lactose-free ingredients are produced by either enzymatic (lactase) treatment or by removing lactose by ultra nanofiltration. Lactose-free milk is then sold as such or processed into variety of foods, such as yoghurts, quarks, spreads and ice creams. Since lactose intolerance is not an allergic condition, often also simply reducing the levels of lactose in the product will suffice.

The gluten-free approach is very different from lactose-free. The most important consumer group of gluten-free products is people with celiac disease, that is, a proven allergic reaction to the protein gluten. In the cases of allergies, even very low levels of the allergen can be harmful and thus (unlike lactose-free products) a rigorous control of the whole production chain is necessary.

Since gluten is crucial in the formation of dough structure it does not make sense to produce gluten-free flour from gluten containing cereals (wheat, barley, rye). Instead gluten containing cereals are replaced with non-gluten containing cereals such as oats and buckwheat. During the milling process of non-gluten cereals it is very important to have separate or dedicated processing lines to prevent cross-contamination with gluten-containing products. (Sontag-Strohm et al. 2008). [NOTE: For examples of lactose and gluten-free products see the complementary Market Analyses report for Functional Foods.

An example of a completely new value chain in the area of functional ingredients is faba beans (or broad beans, as they are known in Australia). VTT has conducted a feasibility study related to a new domestic protein source from faba beans for human nutrition. Faba beans (Vicia faba) have been cultivated for a long time in Finland, but they have been mainly used as animal feed. New value-added ingredients and food products from faba bean were identified in a nationally funded project and their values were estimated according to the local market prices (Figure 21).

48 http://www.foodinsight.org/Functional_Foods_Fact_Sheet_Plant_Stanols_and_Sterols#sthash.e15E43Tl.dpbs
The on-going project (2015) aims at commercialisation of two patents which VTT has recently filed. The first patent is related to the fractionation and fermentation of faba beans in order to improve their nutritive value, the second patent about applications of the obtained fractions in pasta has been submitted. The processing costs of fractionated and/or fermented faba ingredients were evaluated by a techno-economic assessment based on the annual production capacity of 13200t (Figure 22). The assessment revealed that the most profitable way for the valorisation of faba beans was to fractionate the beans into protein and starch enriched fractions (with around 31 and 59% mass yields, respectively, taking into account ca. 10% losses). The production and investment costs of the fractionation process could be fully covered by the value of the starch fraction, if the market price of the starch rich fraction was 1.8 €/kg (as estimated in Figure 21). The profitability of fermented protein fraction (Case 4, Figure 23) was also good, but still lower compared to Case 3 when faba beans were only fractionated to starch and protein fractions.

*The price of raw material (220 €/ton) is based on the market price in Finnish feed market. This value chain doesn’t take into account the processing and investment costs, only the final values of each ingredient or product.
Figure 22. Flow diagram and mass balances of the faba bean fractionation and fermentation process.
Figure 23. Processing and investment costs of faba bean production based on two different capacities (3000 or 6000bdt/a).

Definitions for different cases: 1. Faba flour (without fractionation and fermentation). 2. Fermented faba flour (without fractionation). 3. Fractionated faba (to obtain protein + starch fractions) . 4. Fractionated flour, where only the protein fraction is fermented.
General needs and requirements

As functional ingredients are not produced in South Australia, food manufacturers have to add commercially available functional ingredients and/or source globally available technology for extracting specific ingredients. The key to successful market entry in the functional ingredients market is the ability to identify market opportunities created by consumer needs for these functional ingredients. Australian consumers are very accepting of new additions to their mainstream food; however it cannot be too different or appear unnatural. For instance, sterols in margarine have worked well, however sterols in milk and yoghurt have not fared so well as the addition of sterols in these foods is seen as unnatural.

For smaller firms, it is important for them to be supported in learning to understand the market, the category opportunity and the innovations to drive to new products. Technology alone is not going to solve and meet the consumer need. There will need to be a combination of innovation support (so how to identify the opportunity areas and create/develop the right ideas into products will be critical). The technology side is the enabler. The other aspect of an innovation in the market is ensuring there is a return on investment from the new technologies; Australia is a small market so companies need to be encouraged to make the opportunity as big as possible, so must go beyond the domestic market.

Most common ingredients are easily available from global distributors. A single ingredient can be available in many different formulations dedicated for different food applications. Thus, the first step in the process is to decide which food applications are to be targeted. For functional foods, these should be foods that are consumed on a daily basis in suitable quantities in order to deliver the health benefit.

Ingredient distributors often give advice on how to utilise their products in specific food matrices such as bakery, dairy and meat products. In addition, the food/health claim regulations of the target market country should be studied to determine which types of supplementations (and at what levels) and health claims are allowed. If the ingredient in question is already an established one, the manufacturer is the best source of information for the actual food formulations. If a new formulation is targeted, then research and development support will be required in product development.

In South Australia, production should begin by experimenting with production of ingredients from easily available raw materials such as wine industry side streams (e.g. flavonoids), cereals or dairy, and by building the required capability. In the first instance, adopting/licencing of the best technology currently available overseas should be considered to initiate learning in the industry. At the same time, technology upscaling capability should be achieved by developing necessary concentration of expertise (e.g. food innovation upscaling centre previously described).

There is also need to identify, develop and produce new unique ingredients, some of which could be extracted from native raw materials in Australia. To explore this avenue, extensive patent landscape analysis needs to be performed. Production processes for functional ingredients tend to be heavily patented. A careful feasibility evaluation is necessary to identify opportunities (keeping in mind technology licensing). For example, functional ingredients can also be utilised in non-food
applications, such as in cosmetics. Some functional ingredients, such as food-grade antioxidants and probiotics are already used in cosmetics.49, 50

**Potential customers and markets**

The potential customers for functional ingredients are the producers of functional foods and supplements. Consumers often have a choice whether to consume the ingredient as a supplement (liquid, powder or pill) or as a part of a food. These preferences, as well as preferences regarding the consumption of specific ingredients, vary in different countries (for full discussion, see Functional and Luxury Project Literature Review).

The main reasons behind the consumption of functional ingredients are increasing obesity (and related metabolic disorders), aging (and related health problems) and lifestyle related issues (stress and mental issues, gastrointestinal symptoms etc.). Some consumers want to avoid certain food components (lactose, gluten). The use of lactose free products is typically restricted to lactose intolerant people (lactose malabsorbers) whereas gluten free products are consumed mainly by celiacs. Different functional ingredients and their potential health effects have been discussed in detail in the Literature Review.

The demand for functional ingredients is increasing rapidly in Asian countries. As analysed in the Phase 1, the key opportunities in functional food markets for South Australia are driven by growing living standards, increasing health awareness, increasing healthcare expenditures, aging population, and increased incidence of medical disorders such as metabolic syndrome.

**Required capabilities and competencies**

The local technology capability is largely limited to laboratory scale production of ingredients within universities and research institutes (e.g. high-lutein wheat (University of Adelaide), bioactive components in wine (University of Adelaide) and in seaweed (Flinders University)).

Upscaling technology developed from laboratory scale to industrial scale will be expensive and typically will require pilot scale development facilities. As capability to upscale ingredient production to industrial scale does not exist in South Australia, it would need to be developed. The capabilities required are applied research competencies, pilot scale technology and product development facilities, and commercialisation skills.

An obvious starting point is to start to produce the ingredients for which scientific and production support is available locally. The pathways to the actual industrial production vary: for high-lutein wheat upscaling the growing of the specific wheat variety is needed, followed by dedicated industrial milling facilities (this is comparable to the production of gluten-free products). For the production of bioactive ingredients from grape/wine production side-streams, dedicated processing facilities are needed.

The preferred model for building upscaling competence is to establish a local hub for knowledge, expertise and technical facilities under one roof in a food innovation centre. A centre would bring together competencies from universities, provide pilot facilities for companies to scale up towards industrial scale, attract equipment suppliers to collaborate and provide local support, as well as support education activities and nurturing start-up firms. This model would allow pooling scarce

49 http://www.esdor.es/en/
resources into a shared capability between universities, leading companies, and expert service providers.

International examples of this approach include biotechnology centre QB3, a biotech incubator facility in San Francisco, USA\(^5\). Its main field is the quantitative biosciences, a domain that combines methods of physics, chemistry, and computer science for the use of molecular biology. It is a combination of new start-up companies, serial entrepreneurs, investors and university competencies (UC Berkeley, UC Santa Cruz and UCSF). In its operations, QB3 utilises research facilities, educational programs, internships, mentoring, incubators, and a seed-stage venture fund\(^5\). According to Richard Yu, Scientific and Operations Director of QB3, the aim of the incubator is to create an open space for early stage start-up companies to start their business and share the lab equipment (source: interview by VTT, 7 April 2015).

The incubator is a private company funded by different investment funds. The operation model is based on renting state-of-the-art research equipment for the companies that are located in the space. In the QB3 laboratories, the rent is based on the metres of standard laboratory table required by the companies for their operations. Office spaces are basically open offices that aim to facilitate as much interaction among companies as possible. One basic idea of the incubator is to set more experienced and completely new entrepreneurs in the same space to catalyse the information and experience exchange between them. The QB3 model of knowledge exchange is founded on workshops that are organised among the companies in the facilities. QB3 also has regional or country clients for whom the centre tailors different training programmes (http://qb3.org/about/global). Australia is a country client for QB3 through the Rosenman Institute, based at the University of California in San Francisco, and the field of training is development and marketing of medical instruments.

A food innovation centre in South Australia would also allow executing and coordinating capacity building projects, training programmes, technology diffusion initiatives and start-up support activities (see Figure 19 and related text).

**Key enabling technologies**

It will be necessary to source commercially available functional food ingredients in order to enter into the functional foods market on a local basis and enable industry learning. The actor mapping process completed during Phase 1 of the Functional and Luxury Foods Project provides an extensive list of actors in the functional ingredient/food industry in Australia and target Asian countries.

An example is Valio’s lactose-free technology, which is available by licensing. The licensing agreement gives access to the patented production technology, analytical methods and complete current expertise related to the production of lactose free milk. In addition, Valio supports its licensees by sharing its go-to-market knowledge and marketing communication experience\(^5\). Currently this technology has been licenced in Australia to New South Wales-based MPD dairy products\(^5\).

---

\(^5\) http://qb3.org/startups/incubators
\(^5\) http://qb3.org/about/mission
\(^5\) http://www.valio.com/solutions/valio-eila-lactose-free
Required infrastructure and ecosystem

Production of functional ingredients requires sophisticated research and development capability. While universities and research institutes can provide some of the infrastructure and innovation ecosystem support, what is currently missing is technology upscaling from laboratory to industrial production scale. Several countries have built this kind of capability by establishing technology institutes and applied research centres (e.g. Fraunhofer in Germany, VTT in Finland, TNO and NIZO in the Netherlands, Danish Technological Institute DTI in Denmark), regional innovation centres (e.g. Steinbeis in Germany), or manufacturing extension centres (e.g. the United States) (Table 1). Some of the applied research centres have been established by the industry such as the Dairy Research Institute in the United States.

This pathway requires a smart functional foods development programme which contributes to building a local ecosystem.

Table 12. Examples of research institutions in the area of food technology.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Examples of research Institutes with food technology upscaling facilities</th>
<th>web-site</th>
<th>Activities in food area</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fraunhofer (Germany)</td>
<td><a href="https://www.fraunhofer.de/en/fields-of-research.html">https://www.fraunhofer.de/en/fields-of-research.html</a></td>
<td>Fraunhofer scientists evaluate the physiological effectiveness of special foods and food supplements. They also develop new processing methods, for instance for low-fat meat products, and research new sources of nutrition, such as lupin seeds.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSIRO (Australia)</td>
<td><a href="http://www.csiro.au/">http://www.csiro.au/</a></td>
<td>Food and farming research ranges from studying the make-up of the crops and animals to the methods and food processing technologies. Nutrition and health is one important focus area. CSIRO’s food innovation centre helps food, ingredient and equipment manufacturing companies to access CSIRO’s expertise, technologies and support in innovation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TNO (The Netherlands)</td>
<td><a href="https://www.tno.nl/en/">https://www.tno.nl/en/</a></td>
<td>TNO works in the areas of healthy foods, new protein sources, 3D food printing, personalisation of foods, and Food South Australiafety.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VTT (Finland)</td>
<td><a href="http://www.vttresearch.com/about-us">http://www.vttresearch.com/about-us</a></td>
<td>VTT develops new technologies and concepts for the food and beverage sector. The research focuses on the following topics: technologies for novel proteins and fibre ingredients, designing appealing and healthy foods and beverages, adding value to side-streams and microbiological safety. VTT combines bio and mechanical processing to develop sustainable technologies for producing ingredients from cereals, berries, pulses and various side-streams. VTT has also an analytical platform for predicting physiological functionality of food. The latest research topics include rethinking the food delivery chain and creating new solutions for promoting healthy food choices amongst consumers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DTI (Denmark)</td>
<td></td>
<td>In the area of food and packaging DTI has activities in the areas of consumer testing, product quality and shelf life, sensory analysis, food contact materials, food microbiology, HACCP, stabilisation of food ingredients and packaging. Danish Meat Research Institute is also part of DTI.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Examples of research Institutes with food technology upscaling facilities | web-site | Activities in food area
---|---|---
NIZO (The Netherlands) | http://www.nizo.com/about-nizo/nizo-in-short/ | NIZO food research is a global centre in proteins, bacteria, and processing. NIZO is an independent company and one of the most advanced contract research centres in the world. NIZO bring the latest food technologies to life in their own food grade processing plant.

DIL (Germany) | http://www.dil-ev.de/en.html | With around 150 member companies from the food industry and related fields, the German Institute of Food Technologies (DIL) operates as a research institute working in the areas of product development, process development and analysis. Forming a bridge between science and practice, DIL supports its partners in the innovation process.

Companies in the field
A few companies in South Australia currently qualify for embarking on the pathway to develop functional foods products with local ingredient production. Wine companies especially, who can potentially produce their own functional ingredients from their own raw materials / side streams have potential here. This would necessitate collaboration with the companies to achieve the necessary critical mass. A good example here is the Matarromera Group described above.

Small companies seeking to identify their potential in the functional ingredients market must understand the market opportunity and challenges, and identifying how the new opportunity will meet and solve these. Questions to be asked include:

- What is the size of the opportunity?
- Who will buy this product? (is the target functional food or supplement producers or both?)
- Why will they buy the product?
- What need does it fulfil in a consumers life?
- How are consumers filling their need today?
- Could this new product eliminate this or will it be add on?
- Does the opportunity increase when it goes beyond domestic markets?

Scale in a country and market the size of Australia will always be a challenge given the population – this is the critical reason that businesses need to identify the bigger opportunity across domestic and export markets and spread the risk of new products.

Information about companies and their products currently in Australian and Asian markets can be found in the complementary Market Analysis report.
Pathway 3: Active, intelligent and polysensual packaging solutions

Figure 24. Group work output for Pathway 3: Active and intelligent packaging.

Background
High quality packaging is a necessary requirement for both functional and luxury products. The present packaging supply is often limited to conventional packaging solutions. These fall short in communicating the supreme quality, exclusivity and sophistication of the product in both functional and luxury food categories. As identified in Phase 1 of this study, the current state of the local packaging providers in the South Australia could be improved with new approaches to packaging (refer more detailed information in the ‘Technology Assessment’ section of this Report).

General needs and requirements
As the present packaging supply is rather limited, there is a need to diversify towards higher quality packaging to meet specific demands. Sustainability is the main consideration related to packaging, and this is driving adoption of light-weighting and bio-based materials such as bioplastics and fibre-based packaging.

Core technological competencies should be developed in sustainable packaging by exploring connections between packaging and local industry in South Australia. This would assist in making South Australia attractive to the key suppliers and, in the long term, encouraging them to establish a local presence with design capability, some material suppliers and converters, and packaging solution providers.

The megatrend of digitalisation will also have impact on the food industry. In South Australia, digitalisation should be connected with supply chain management, and the functions of the company in the value network. Thus, key technologies would include solutions for supply chain
management, internet marketing, electronic data interchange, inventory management systems, and automated data collection systems. Intelligent packaging solutions will also eventually play an important role in the digitalisation of the food industry.

There is need to improve the adaptation and utilisation of existing active and intelligent packaging solutions available in the market which are suited to the needs of functional and luxury food products. South Australia should seek to establish a position as a testing ground for new ideas and innovation.

Potential customers and markets
The potential end customers are consumers of functional and luxury food products, both locally and globally. Intermediary clients also include specialised retailers and distribution channels for functional food. The local packaging material industry could also find new customers, especially in fast growing markets in near neighbouring countries.

Required capabilities and competencies
South Australian food and beverages companies need to develop competencies to exploit state-of-art packaging solutions. The economic scale in South Australia is probably too limited to suffice alone to create enough demand for advanced packaging solutions. A national model should be promoted.

Companies producing packages for luxury and premium products utilise different business models. In general, the closer the material supplier is to the packed product business, the more involved they usually are. For example, in the area of cans and glass/plastic bottles large multinational companies, such as Crown, Allied Glass, O-I Glass and Amcor are present, supported by packaging designers (ThreeBrand, Webb DeVlam, PET Engineering, etc.), while there are few smaller companies producing, for example, plastic films, paper and paperboard specifically for luxury packages.

Typically, large international film, carton and label converters, such as Multi Packaging Solutions for cartons, have their own design departments and a set of converting and printing processes available for such materials. Alternatively, converters are specialised in a narrower material sector, and they act as subcontractors for packaging solutions providers. Solutions providers, such as MW Luxury Packaging and HH Deluxe Packaging, typically combine design, material suppliers, (manual) finishing, and delivery around the world. Some of these companies have also focused on secondary packages (such as boxes for bottles).

As the local packaging industry cannot supply sophisticated packaging solutions, these capabilities need to be developed. The first step towards initiating national and local activities would be to promote Australian luxury and functional products through domestic and international campaigns. This would eventually result in a need for advanced packaging solutions, making Australia - and South Australia specifically - an attractive market for converting companies, certain packaging material producers, and their suppliers to invest in new production facilities and material solutions or upgrading their current facilities for packaging grades.

Such a change also provides possibilities for a move towards sustainable bio- and fibre-based packaging materials, although the volumes are not necessarily large without a similar step occurring in bulk products, supporting new technologies and/or legislation.

In addition, the proximity of Asia as a major supplier of these materials could assist this development. There are already several domestic design companies in Australia, however it could also be possible to attract international packaging solution providers to open their offices in South Australia or to establish local ones in South Australia with an adequate customer base. This could
eventually increase the use of local packaging materials, although the more labour intensive process steps will likely need to be carried out in near neighbouring countries with lower labour costs. In addition, in order to provide traceability solutions, a shared capability between the companies in the delivery chain needs to be developed.

An important aspect of luxury packaging is to create an experience that is in line with the product. In the case of luxury products, the hedonic aspects especially need to be taken into account, while the utilitarian aspects are less important. Positive hedonic influence comes from the buying of luxury goods for enjoyment and stimulation, while utilitarian goods are items bought out of necessity and don’t necessarily bring joy to the consumer. In order to understand hedonic aspects of luxury foods in detail, it is important to determine the mental and visual attributes consumers associate with the luxury package in question. Experience mapping is one possible way of understanding and visualising how well consumer perception and the values of the brand owner/producer of the product connect with each other.

A possible innovation centre could also facilitate packaging-related service research, training, equipment and facility rental with technical support etc.

Key enabling technologies
In active packaging, the key technologies to explore are absorbing and scavenging systems, releasing systems, and systems where substances are grafted or immobilized onto the wall of the package. Technologies such as antioxidative and antimicrobial systems should also be explored.

Active packaging is an extension of the protection function of traditional food packaging, and is designed to contain a component that enables the release or absorption of substances into or from the packaged food, or the environment surrounding the food. Active packaging involves use of an active system that can maintain the shelf life of a product or extend it. It is based on the interaction between the molecules in packaging and the product packed. Packaging that contains absorbers (silica gel, oxygen absorbers, and odour absorbers) or releasers (preservatives, flavours, aerosols, antioxidants) fall in this category.

In intelligent packaging, the important technologies include the different types of food packaging indicators and food packaging sensors. Intelligent packaging is an extension of the communication function of traditional food packaging, and communicates information to the consumer based on its ability to sense, detect, or record changes in the product or its environment. In many cases, it incorporates electronic devices onto the packaging system. For example, the sensors on the package can record the temperature or pH on the product through the supply chain. The capability to apply RFID technology to monitor storage conditions (temperature, humidity, light) and food quality through the entire supply chain has become available. Some sensor types need to be inserted into the inner side of the package, while others can be placed outside.

RFID technologies are used in the supply chain to track and control the movement and handling of raw materials and products with great precision throughout several processes along the supply chain. RFID is grouped under the term Automatic Identification (Auto ID), together with barcodes, QR-codes, magnetic inks etc. Auto ID technologies are a relatively new method of providing information and/or controlling material flow, and are particularly suitable for large production networks such as food supply chains. Auto ID technologies do not provide qualitative or quantitative information about the product quality status; they are typically applied for purposes such as identification, automatisation, theft prevention or counterfeit protection.
Table 13. Active and intelligent packaging functions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Need</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Shelf life extension</td>
<td>Active packaging. Antimicrobial packaging. Developments of integrated systems include oxygen scavengers in packaging material such as closure seal liners.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indicators for both time and temperature abuse</td>
<td>Time and temperature indicators that allow indicating any changes during storage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ability to indicate ideal temperature of the food and beverage</td>
<td>Thermochromic inks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Food or beverage deterioration and spoilage by oxygen</td>
<td>Oxygen scavenger, oxygen indicators</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Microbial contamination indication</td>
<td>Freshness indicators and sensors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ability to track and trace products through the supply chain</td>
<td>Use of RFID’s and custom sensor technology to improve stock taking, product replenishment and unit price adjustment</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Oxygen is known to adversely influence the microbial and flavour stability of foodstuffs such as cheese and meat products, juices, margarine, ketchup, beer, wine etc. The first oxygen scavenging systems were sachets in the packaging. Today oxygen scavenging labels such as ATCO® labels from Laboratories STANDA and Ageless® labels (Mitsubishi Gas Chemical Company, Inc.) are available. The trend in commercial applications is to incorporate oxygen scavengers to the packaging material. Examples include Cryovac® OS2000 (Sealed Air Corporation, USA), a polymer based oxygen scavenging multilayer flexible film activated by ionising radiation. RPC Bebo Plastik GmbH has launched a rigid oxygen scavenging system consisting of high barrier container made in PP/EVOH/PP for the ready meals market.

Antimicrobial packaging, particularly silver-based materials, has had success in Japan and USA. An important number of antimicrobial silver-based masterbatches are available in the market: Biomaster®, Aglon®, Irgaguard®, Surfacine®, IonPure®, d2p®, Bactiblock®. LINPAC Packaging Ltd., with Addmaster, developed antimicrobial trays and liddings to reduce the growth of pathogens such as salmonella, escherichia coli and campylobacter in fresh meat. The FoodTouch® product from Microbeguard Corp. is an antimicrobial paper that keeps perishable foods fresher longer, and works well to preserve the natural colour and texture of raw proteins (including seafood and meat). SANICO® (Laboratories STANDA) is a natamycine-based antifungal coating for sausages. Mitsubishi-Kagaku Foods Corp. has developed Wasaouro™ an antimicrobial material containing allyl isothiocyanate substance, and is available in a variety of formats (sheets, labels and films).

Time Temperature Indicators that are available in the market are based on physical, chemical, enzymatic or biological processes and include 3M Monitor Mark® (3M Company), Keep-it® (Keep-it Technologies), Fresh-Check® (Temptime Corp.), VITSAB® (VITSAB International AB), OnVu® (Freshpoint), TopCryo® (TRACEO), FreshCode® (Varcode Ltd.), Tempix® (Tempix AB). As an example, OnVu™ indicators contain a pigment that changes colour over time at temperature dependant rates. The indicator is activated by exposure to UV light to become dark blue, and the colour gradually fades with time. This system can be applied as a label or printed directly onto the package.

Integrity indicators are time indicators that provide information about how long a product has been opened. The label is activated at the moment of consumption. When the seal is broken, it triggers a timer and results in a colour change as time progresses. Some commercial examples are Timestrip®
(Timestrip Ltd.), Novas® Embedded Label (Insignia Technologies Ltd.), and Best-by™ (FreshPoint Lab.).

Among the various types of gas indicators, oxygen indicators are the most common. Ageless Eye® tablets (Mitsubishi Gas Chemical Company, Inc.) are reversible oxygen indicators used in combination with oxygen absorbers. EMCO Packaging has launched non-reversible oxygen indicator labels. FreshPoint Lab. has presented O2Sense™ indicator label to detect leakages in MAP packages.

Freshness indicators monitor the quality of the packed food by reacting to changes taking place in the food product during storage. Food spoilage is a complex process due to the heterogeneity of the individual material compositions and processing conditions. Changes in the concentration of substances such as glucose, organic acids, ethanol, carbon dioxide, biogenic amines, volatile nitrogen compounds or sulphuric compounds indicate microbial growth can be used as freshness indicators. It is not known whether any freshness sensor is currently commercially available.

Track and trace technologies using RFID’s and sensors have the potential to reduce losses from counterfeit products, protect consumers by managing recalls more efficiently and reducing negative economic impacts, comply with food contact material regulations, and to provide relevant information to consumers in real time. These technologies are useful across multiple segments. Track and trace can be exploited in food and consumer products - and practically any product that can be sold in a deceptive or broken state. The main advantages of RFID over barcodes are that they allow remote control (because line-of-sight is usually not required), multiple items can be monitored at the same time, and they have capacity to store diverse information (origin, process parameters, commercial information, etc.) allowing a unique identification of the product.

There are a number of RFID suppliers, such as EPSILIA (Canada), RFID Enabled solutions Inc. (USA), and HRAFN Ltd. (Sweden), that have worked together with meat and fish industries to implement RFID systems. More evolved RFID systems also allow the integration of other functions into the RFID tag, such as time-temperature indicators and sensors to monitor and communicate the temperature history and quality information of the product. The combined use of RFID and sensor technology applied to the cold chain results in an improvement in supply chain management efficiency and in less waste.

Some examples of reusable TT sensor tags for the cold chain are Easy2log© (CAEN RFID Srl), sensor tag CS8304 (Convergence Systems Ltd.), and TempTRIP sensor tags (TempTRIP LLC). Some packaging manufacturers have incorporated RFID systems into their food boxes. Mondi Plc has presented its Intelligent Box, an RFID-enabled corrugated case that is equipped with an RFID tag at case level, enabling it to be traced throughout the entire supply chain.

Solutions based on augmented reality (AR) will also be important in developing local competencies in the luxury food segment. Augmented Reality (AR) is the technique of superimposing virtual objects in the user’s view of the real world, providing a novel visualisation technology for a wide range of applications. Hence, it is a user interface technology that combines the perception of real environments with digital, virtual information. Rapid development has been taking place in this area in the past few years, and new demonstrations and commercial applications appear constantly.

The growing use of mobile devices such as smartphones and tablets are affecting people’s attitudes towards constantly being online and having access to web services. Consumers are increasingly used to getting updated information based on their instant needs using these devices. In the case of luxury products, AR provides a possibility for sophisticated combinations of the physical and digital worlds.
In addition to the hedonic aspects of luxury packaging, user acceptance and readiness to use technology is an important factor to consider when bringing any novel solution to the market. There may be clear cultural differences in the way people perceive and experience the use of technology. In general, there are three main factors affecting the user acceptance of mobile services: perceived value of the service, perceived ease of use, and trust. Through involving the users/consumers in the development process of new service concepts (for example by using participatory design, co-creation models) it is possible to discover the major differences between different cultural areas and identify the most important issues in consumer attitudes in the very early stages of the development process, enabling designers to take these into account during service design.

**Required infrastructure and ecosystem**
- Information and communication technology service providers
- Luxury packaging design, especially for local and Asian markets
- Approval procedures and laboratory trials before commercialisation
- Research and development partnerships with research providers for packaging development
- Markets, new technologies and legislation to support bio-based materials
- Suppliers for packaging materials and special solutions, converters
- Management across supply chains and related data/routines
- A large enough sector of companies producing luxury foods

**Companies in the field (active and intelligent packaging):**
There is currently a vast amount of development in smart packaging technologies. The most developed and used technology is in the food and beverage industry. A non-exhaustive list of these is provided in Table 13.

**Table 14. Key companies in active and intelligent packaging business.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Companies</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Liquid and moisture absorbers</td>
<td>Sealed Air Corporation, McAirlad Inc, Linpac Packaging</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time-temperature monitoring</td>
<td>3M Company, Temptime Corp., Vitsab International, Freshpoint, TRACEO, Tempix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oxygen scavenger</td>
<td>Clariant Ltd, Multisorb Technologies, Standa Laboratories, Mitsubishi Gas Chemical, Sealed Air Corporation, Emco packaging systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oxygen monitoring</td>
<td>Mitsubishi Gas Chemical, Powdertech International</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ethylene scavenger</td>
<td>Peakfresh, RETARDER SRL, Molecular Products Limited, Evert-Fresh Corporation, Ethylene Control, Inc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carbon dioxide emitters</td>
<td>CO2 Technologies, Paper Pak Industries, Vartdal Plastindustri AS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Freshness monitoring</td>
<td>COX Technologies, Food Quality Sensor International, SIRA Technologies, Toxin Alert</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ripeness indicator</td>
<td>Ripesense Limited</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seal and leak indicators</td>
<td>Mitsubishi Gas Chemical, Freshpoint Lab., Insignia Technologies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RFID</td>
<td>Smarttrac, Confidex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tamper-evident indicators</td>
<td>3M Company</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Authenticity</td>
<td>Sinfotech.it s.r.l.s.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Others: susceptors, steam valves</td>
<td>Sirane, VacPac, Avery Dennison Corp., SEALPAC GmbH</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Pathway 4: Luxury food business strategy uptake and export promotion

Figure 25. Group work output for Pathway 4: Branding and differentiation.

Pathway 4: Branding and differentiation

**Vision:** Underpin the success of individual SA brands & to be recognised alongside other global luxury brands & destinations

**Steps:**
1. Understand the (luxury & functional) consumer/customer → profiling → educate producers on concepts of luxury experiences & offerings
2. Defining your appropriate brand hierarchy (by market) e.g. Australia, → Brand → Region (state largely irrelevant for Australia); language is important! All Australian food & wine & tourism is good (not just luxury)
3. Define, articulate, communicate your differentiated "offer" → the value proposition
4. Back your winners e.g. brands, regions for the greater good: inspiration, leadership, halo effect

**Actors:**
- PIRSA / State government / federal government – whether SA Brand is isn’t relevant in Australia
- Individual enterprises – where do you want to play?
- R&D organisations (partially functional), educational institutions

**Background**
Specific export activities need to be developed within South Australian food companies to exploit opportunities in the Asian luxury food markets. The most important export targets, with already existing export activities, include: China, Hong Kong, Singapore, Japan, Malaysia, South Korea, India and Indonesia.

**General needs and requirements**
There is need to develop a luxury food product offering which responds to identified luxury food demand in Asia. Asian food export from South Australia could be led by fish and seafood production, followed by e.g. dairy and other farming products. Phase 1 of this study found that South Australia contributed 19% of the total value of Australian fisheries production in 2012-2013, the main luxury and premium products being Southern rock lobster and abalone. The main export products also include tuna, prawns, Southern rock lobster and abalone. For example, Japan and Hong Kong are already the major destinations for South Australian fisheries exports, accounting for 57% and 23% of the total value of exports in 2012–13.

Existing best practices include export business in live rock lobster to China, in which South Australia has already demonstrated significant competence. South Australia also has advanced export competencies in oyster farming. However, in both of these segments, the players are relatively small and fragmented.
Marketing activities need to be initiated to enter and establish channels to key markets. The specific emphasis in this export program should be to adopt best available marketing approaches for the specific needs for the luxury food market.

The pathway group work also suggests developing a cluster of luxury food producers, supported by a sophisticated export promotion ecosystem including packaging, design, cultural insight etc. to scale up trading towards 5% of food and wine in luxury category.

**Potential customers and markets**

The potential customers are luxury food consumers (typically high net worth individuals), corporate gift giving plus the occasional situational purchase in Asia, and selected high-end restaurants.

**Required capabilities and competencies for the luxury food companies**

*Marketing skills including e-commerce*

Knowledge of luxury food marketing channels such as prestige magazines or events is needed. In countries where e-commerce is an important element of the retail experience (such as China) luxury brands should consider their e-commerce presence when entering the market. Local social platforms and targets should align with local retail culture.

*Narrative creation and ‘story-making’*

As noted in Phase 1 of this study, the use of experiences and meanings related to food and beverages is an effective method to create value, and widely used by experienced entrepreneurs, such as luxury wine makers. This can include elements such as economics (price, brand), environment (durability, sustainability), societal aspects (communality, ethical values), usability (quality, complexity) and personal aspects (experience, usefulness, life management), which convey new reasons for customers to use and buy things, including using e-commerce solutions.

*Design expertise for high-profile packaging and labels*

As the present packaging supply, and packaging and luxury branding expertise is rather limited in South Australia, there is need to diversify supply towards higher quality packaging to meet specific demands.

*Cultural and historical expertise*

As discussed in detail in the Functional and Luxury Project Literature Review and the ‘Luxury Foods’ section of this Reference Report, attitudes to luxury food consumption are often determined by the prevailing cultures and dietary tastes in each country. In China, for example, many types of luxury seafood are consumed partly because of their links with a range of Chinese cultural beliefs, such as traditional Chinese medicine. As many markets outside China (such as Singapore and Malaysia) have large Chinese populations or draw cultural cues from China (such as Korea), these Chinese cultural ideas regarding luxury foods are present in a broad range of markets. In order to be successful, luxury brands must adapt to local consumer preferences and target retail and marketing strategies to appeal to the target consumer groups.

*Highly personalised customer relationship management*

According to Tanya Oakey 55, luxury consumers have increasingly high expectations of what their experience with the brand should be like. Whilst previously the quality and lure of the products alone could tempt buyers, today’s customers expect more. Developing an emotional attachment between the brand and the customer is vital to the survival and growth of the luxury retailer, and is

---

55 http://www.cegid.co.uk/blog/clienteling-crm_luxury-success.asp
one way to retain and cultivate brand loyalty. To do this, it is important to ensure that prestigious clientele have a personalised and memorable shopping experience.

Attracting new clients, retaining loyal ones and continuously delivering a service which exceeds their ever-growing expectations can be a challenge. By keeping a carefully maintained history of purchases, preferences, likes and dislikes, companies are able to develop accurate and detailed insight to deliver a personalised service which is synonymous with flawless customer service, customer retention, and a unified and memorable brand experience.

Key enabling technologies

*Anti-counterfeiting and tracing technologies*

Roughly 7-10% of the global trade is in counterfeit goods, half of which is in luxury products. Food fraud involves, for example, wine and other spirits, milk, fish and caviar, olive oil, truffles and truffle oil, saffron, honey, cheese, ham and balsamic vinegar. Counterfeiting and tampering undermines consumers’ trust in the product, leading to a loss of market share, and can even risk the health of consumers. Therefore effective measures are needed for the prevention of counterfeiting. These include anti-counterfeiting and tracing technologies. These have been discussed in detail in the Functional and Luxury Project Literature Review, and in the ‘Food Innovation and Technology’ section of this Reference Report (see also Pathway 3, above).

*Consumer and behavioural science, and related scientific areas*

Since consumer preferences vary in different countries, it is of utmost importance to recognise the local preferences, for example regarding packaging material, colour and finish as well as labelling information. Consumer studies, which are now beginning to utilise neuroscience research, are often performed to identify these local preferences. Marketers can now use brain imaging technologies to discover how people make decisions about products, including luxury foods, by testing the level of ‘grey matter’ in the brain (neuromarketing). One example is a study of wine consumption, where functional MRI scanning showed that people with greater grey matter volume in the striatum (the part of the brain involved in processing rewards) responded more easily to the marketing placebo effect. These people were more responsive to perceived rewards; if the wine is expensive it is perceived as good. Participants with a higher grey matter volume in their prefrontal cortex (the part of the brain involved in decision making, social behaviour, and personality) were also susceptible to the placebo effect, whereas those who had more grey matter in the posterior part of the insula (the part of the brain involved in sensory processing), weren’t quite as easily influenced. Such people know when they taste good wine and can’t easily be tricked by a price tag (Plassman et al. 2008).

The scanning technologies required for neuromarketing are expensive, limiting the number of volunteers that can be involved, and the grey matter in the brain does not remain constant throughout a person’s lifetime. As such, it is unlikely that neuromarketing will ever replace more traditional consumer studies; however, it can be used as an additional tool.

*Required infrastructure and ecosystem*

A supportive infrastructure would involve a network of trade agents in the target market countries capable of identifying potential luxury food customers.

---

56 [http://www.foodproductiondaily.com/Packaging/Intelligent-label-protects-foods-against-counterfeiting-and-tampering](http://www.foodproductiondaily.com/Packaging/Intelligent-label-protects-foods-against-counterfeiting-and-tampering)

There is a need to train companies in dealing with technical regulations, standards, and conformity assessment procedures and labelling rules. Food companies (due to their small size) need help in interpreting and fulfilling the various overseas standards in order to succeed in exporting. Collaboration and support programs are necessary because initiating export activities remains a challenge for most small and medium sized enterprises if they need to rely only on their own capabilities.

Austrade provides useful information about export markets, grants, free trade agreements and how to expand the business outside Australia. This service is free of charge to Australian companies. Austrade also offers a range of tailored trade services supporting Australian business exporting to growth and emerging markets in Africa, Asia, the Middle East, Latin America, and Russia⁵⁸.

Among South Australian wine and cheese producers, business cases were identified which have produced premium and luxury product items successfully. A well-known example is Henschke’s Hill of Grace vineyard in Eden Valley⁵⁹.

An example of successful penetration of new markets is the story of how French wine became famous in China/Asia:

*The interest of the rich Chinese people for Bordeaux wines is quite recent. Before, they were much more into spirits and beers. The trade was already important in the early 2000 but it was with the vintage 2010 that things seemed to explode with +100% increase in the Chinese sales⁶⁰. The sudden interest of the Chinese for the French Grand Crus, is a collateral benefit of their global interest for the prestigious French brands (LVMH, Hermes, etc.). It is the French culture in its apparent exclusive character, they seem to be after. So the question is: why is Bordeaux more successful than any other region?*

*Robert Parker’s system of ranking made Bordeaux wines glorious in the USA and the owners of the Bordeaux estates richer than ever. Parker succeeded better with Bordeaux than with any other region as he was welcome and supported by the owners. It was a two-way deal. Bordeaux had the chance to be the first. Parker’s system of ranking is easy to understand: the grade and the price are very much correlated. So the guru of wine came to China and brought the Bordeaux wines with him. Proof of the mutual interests of Parker and China, Parker sold his newspaper to Chinese Singaporean investors⁶¹.”*

The most probable answer to the question of how French wines became famous in other parts of the world would be that the country-of-origin effect, together with good promotion in these markets, contributed to their success.

Why are Australian wines not perceived to be the same as French wines? The problem with Australia and other new world countries is their image as mass producers. The quality is not being questioned, Australian wine is simply perceived by English markets to be a mass produced product and the lack of exclusivity also makes these wines less attractive to the Chinese market. This is more a feeling, or a perception than a reality, but the perception is stubborn: what overseas consumers remember of


the Australian wine industry are the big brands produced in factories the Australians call wineries. Similar facilities do exist in France but they are not as famous as Petrus, Mouton, Lafite or Haut Brion with their rather small, elitist production.

Australian (or any other country) estates would be assisted in changing the perception of their exclusivity by:

1. Choosing a qualitative region away from the big production areas.
2. Delivering hospitality at the estate of the highest standards.
3. Doing the utmost to have the wine selected in the best restaurants abroad (distribution). In addition to this, try to be associated with prestigious sportive and/or social events.
4. Develop a genuine story as the ‘gene’ of a unique identity for the wine. Levantine Hill is a good example. 

The absence of ‘old roots’ is obviously a disadvantage. Very good and prestigious Californian wines, sold for $200+ in the USA, cannot find efficient distributors in Asia. The only recognised American wine in China is Screaming Eagle.

Companies in the field
Companies in the luxury area were listed in the ‘Luxury Foods’ section of this Reference Report.

Luxury food brand marketing
A detailed analysis of the luxury food products (wine, chocolates, caviar, truffles, lobster, oyster, tuna, abalone, cheese and Wagyu) regarding their provenance, pricing, publicity, position, persona, personage, paucity, performance and packaging is shown in the ‘Luxury Foods’ section of this Reference Report.

---

Pathway 5: Luxury wine driven culinary tourism

Figure 26. Group work output for Pathway 5: Food tourism for Asian consumers.

Background

One of the opportunities for South Australia identified by this research project is the combination of luxury food products with food and wine tourism. A particular target group for this strategy would be Asian consumers.

Research has shown that tourists spend almost 40% of their budget on food when travelling. Globally, half of restaurants’ revenue is generated by tourists. Cuisine and gastronomy also have a great impact on travellers’ decisions when choosing their vacation destination. There is, therefore, a natural, symbiotic relationship between tourism and food which can be exploited to open new markets.

Food can be used as an effective tool to position a destination and to build its image. Enjoying food and wine, while travelling, gratifies all the human senses – visual, tactile, auditory, gustatory (taste), and olfactory (smell). Food is strongly linked with the overall vacation experience and can also serve as a gateway to understanding local culture. Perceived authenticity of local food and wine produce has the potential to enhance this experience by connecting the visitor to the heart of the region and its cultural heritage. Multiple concepts have been used in this space including food tourism/wine tourism, culinary tourism, special interest tourism, and foodways/wine routes (Shenoy 2005).

With this pathway it is important to acknowledge that the notion of ‘luxury’ is primarily based on experience, meaning that although the use of certain expensive luxury items could create an ‘aura of luxury’ around some item or practice, the luxury factor is something that primarily operates at the
register of emotional experience. Therefore, building an experience of luxury in a regional context requires specialised actions and alignment of the following factors:

1. The region should have relevant regional infrastructure and services in order to endorse the selected regional brand promise; this includes hotels that fulfil the luxury standard.

2. There should be a capability to build suitable service packages that combine several fields of activities (e.g. wine, sports, luxury hotel infrastructure and services, restaurants, scenery, local travelling) and deliver at level of regional brand promise.

3. Consideration and planning needs to be given to creating an holistic experience that could suit many luxury tastes, including traditional luxury (such as use of global luxury products) and also more experimental luxury experiences, such as adventure travelling. For example, Holohan and Remaud (2014) have argued in their study of the Bordeaux wine region that utilisation of an eco-friendly lifestyle, including eco-friendly products, contributes positively to the experience of overall luxury among the tourists in the region of Bordeaux.

General targets
The general target approaches for this pathway could include development of a comprehensive offering for combined luxury food and wine tourism in South Australia, covering all aspects of the service experience including travel, accommodation, food and wine, other activities such as culture, entertainment etc. According to a recent empirical study, 12 categories of experience are identified with culinary tourism including food and beverages (Minihan 2014):

1. Learning and knowledge: testing, tasting, training etc.
2. Physical setting: mood, ambience etc.
3. Entertainment and local culture: music, local culture, art etc.
4. Food / beverage quality: freshness, consistency etc.
5. Quantity
6. Variety: menu flavours etc.
7. Backstage access: brewery tours etc.
8. Senses beyond taste: visual sense
9. Sustainability
10. Target market
11. Differentiation: locally owned, location, design, identity etc.
12. Social media presence / technology: marketing etc.

This list highlights the comprehensiveness of culinary tourism experiences in covering the multiple aspects needed to provide superior service.

As noted in Phase 1 of this study, food tourism is a growing market, comprising travellers seeking the authenticity of the places they visit through food. The Eat Local SA program for consumers and premium wine and food tours serve as a good basis for further development of South Australia’s food tourism and promotion of South Australia as a luxury food region.

Enhanced promotion of South Australia as a luxury food and wine destination could expand the inbound tourism opportunity. It is crucial to acknowledge that tourists seeking luxury experience are not a homogeneous group, except in the sense that they are ready to pay big sums of money for memorable experiences.
The initial focus for South Australia should be given culinary tourism, including wine tourism (see Karim and Chi 2010). For example, Beames (2003) has argued there are possibilities in the Australian wine industry, but several bottlenecks have hindered development to date. These include: the current cottage industry mentality of wine tourism, the lack of inter-industry cooperation between the wine industry and the tourism industry, creating an overall tourist experience rather than seeing wine tourism as cellar door sales, local planning and development consent issues, lack of investment funds, and lack of available data, information and research (Beames 2003: 207).

One overall solution for the bottlenecks identified by Beames (2003) would be to develop experience economy in the context of wine tourism, as suggested by Quadri-Fellitti and Fiore (2012). They propose the use of 4E strategy utilised in experience economy studies. The “Es” here stand for: entertainment, education, esthetic and escapist (see Figure 27). What is important in this context is that luxury experience should be understood as series of differentiated experiences that are captured by the 4Es model. Thus, when building a luxury wine and food tourism strategy for South Australia, the 4Es should be considered: there are luxury tourists that seek luxury in a more traditional sense, but there are also tourists that seek a combination of traditional luxury and unique experiences.

Figure 27. 4E model of experience economy in the context of wine tourism (adapted from Quadri-Fellitti and Fiore 2012:8).

Espousing the feeling of luxury is always a combination of different ideas. Thus, it not just wine or a particular food that brings the tourists to a destination, but the overall combination of different factors. For example, Carmichael (2005) has found that the experience of the local landscape is of particular importance for wine tourists. Bruwer and Alant (2009) have found in an empirical study that the most important single factor that endorses the wine experience is the region’s scenery. Other contributing factors are friendly people and their hospitality, overall ambience and the diversity of wine estates in the region. They conclude that these results point to the fact that wine tourists seek an overall hedonic experience.

This pathway discussion group suggested that South Australia could adopt a wider strategy of culinary tourism, including wine and food experiences. Culinary tourism can be defined as a form of “tourism where an opportunity for memorable food and drink experiences contribute significantly to travel motivation and behaviour” (Wong 2006, cited in Harrington and Ottenbacher 2010).
In addition, a study by Kivela and Crotts (2006: 354) empirically shows “that gastronomy plays a major role in the way tourists experience the destination, and indicate that some travellers would return to the same destination to savour its unique gastronomy” (emphasis added). The notion of uniqueness is critical here. The luxury experience is significantly based on the feeling of uniqueness, not of luxury that is available everywhere and for everyone. Uniqueness should be the keyword when planning a strategy for the South Australia, not the generic notion of global brand luxury. In this sense the culinary tourism can be perceived as a service package for the regional branding of South Australia as a “unique and differentiated culinary region”.

One perspective for building a differentiated, unique and experimental regional strategy in culinary tourism s shown in Gyimóthy and Mykletun’s (2009) study of the Voss region in Norway. This region has formed a novel strategy for building their regional brand, focusing on branding the region as a source of “meal adventures” in the field of heritage food.

In this case, the crux of the experience is a dish called “smalahove” (a salted, dried, smoked and cooked sheep head) that authors describe as “scary food”. Based on feedback from tourists, the region has built a strategy around a local heritage food and “meal adventures”, and the researchers found that it has contributed positively to the regional brand. This strategy seems to work especially in the more remote rural settings. Therefore, one part of the luxury experience in South Australia could also be built around local specialities, that is, certain dishes or habits. These kinds of local experiences should complement the overall luxury experience, and make it more varied for the heterogeneous luxury tourists seeking differentiated luxury experiences.

South Australia currently lacks a critical piece of infrastructure, namely luxury hotels and accommodation. Hotels are a critical component in the luxury experience chain, and it is likely that the current standard of hotels, and related services, do not currently comply with the expectations of the luxury-seeking customer.

Steps to be complete in the mid-term include: creation of unified definitions for products, building stronger understanding and utilisation of the cultural heritage, development of relevant infrastructure and related services, intensified co-operation among industry stakeholders (producers, hotels, travel agents etc.), and ensuring the sustainability and the maintenance of high quality services and products. A related mid-term target would be to create new service products for health and wellbeing tourism. A long term target is the development of South Australia and its sub-regions (e.g. wine areas) as recognised destinations for food and wine tourism.

Potential customers and markets
The potential customers are high net worth individuals in Asia who are willing to explore food and wine in the origin of its production. Consumers of luxury products can be segmented by making a distinction between “über wealthy”, “mass elite”, and “medium luxury” groups (Hallott 2013).

The über wealthy group comprises the world’s financial elite with a minimum annual income of $1million. The mass elite consist of major businesspeople, officials, and heirs of capital whose wealth is based predominantly on stocks, shares and property. The third group, medium luxury, are high salary workers and affluent middle class whose luxury consumption is more typically based on credit.

The conventional segmentation of potential customers for luxury products assumes a rather linear relationship between the wealth of the individual and his/her consumption pattern. More recently, a pattern of hybridisation has been observed among the consumers closer to the mid income range. These ‘hybrid consumers’ are willing to trade up and purchase luxury products if these are perceived to offer experience and gain higher status amongst their peers (Leppanen & Gronroos 2009). One
potential customer group for luxury tourism and hospitality can thus be mid-income individuals with a desire to experience a once in a lifetime opportunity.

Japan and Australia have traditionally been the sources for highest numbers of luxury tourists in the Asia-Pacific region. More recently, large emerging markets, most notably China and India, have been increasing rapidly. According to one market intelligence estimate, there are 8,300 individuals in China with CNY 1 billion or more in assets in 2014 (Hurun Report & ILTM Asia 2014). The majority of these high net worth individuals are residents of the largest metropolitan areas - Beijing, Shanghai, Guangzhou and Shenzen. For these wealthy Chinese, travel is the preferred leisure activity for their average 18-22 annual vacation days. Wine tasting is among the top ten most popular activities with 10% of the Chinese rich showing preference to it. Other leisure activities which can be combined with a tourism offering are fishing (8%) and yachting/sailing (4%). The sports preferred by wealthy Chinese are swimming (37%), golf (23%) and yoga (22%).

Potential revenue streams in 3–5 years
In three to five years’ time, the biggest revenue streams will come from Asian customers with a willingness to consume sophisticated, high-priced services in South Australia.

Required capabilities and competencies

- Travel and accommodation services. Attracting luxury travellers requires provision of premium accommodation and travel services. Currently there are only a few facilities in South Australia which qualify for the highest category of service level in luxury hotels and premium villa rental.
- Food and wine services at vineyards and restaurants.
- Food and wine events. Events such as wine and food festivals provide opportunities for local communities to establish a destination identity as they can ‘promote the importance of local tourism resources to the outside world’.
- Other activities (e.g. culture, entertainment, sports)
- Social media. Among potential Chinese luxury tourist customers, online social media, particularly micro-messaging and micro-blogging, is the most popular source of information, with more than half of respondents to this survey expressing a preference for this channel. TV and newspapers follow only in the second and third place (Hurun Report & ILTM Asia 2014).
- Marketing and media. One potential channel to boost the attraction of South Australia as a destination for culinary tourism is through Australian cooking programmes and reality TV contests (e.g. Master Chef Australia) which are relatively widely broadcast in many countries.

Key enabling technologies
- Media and marketing technologies
- Online media, social media tools
- Smart logistics

Required infrastructure and ecosystem
Luxury tourism services comprise three main categories which all are needed to provide an exclusive experience to a customer (Howarth HTL 2011).

Accommodation
- Classic luxury hotels (e.g. The Pierre in NYC, The Ritz in Paris)
- Boutique or designer hotels (The Bulgari in Milan)
• Destination hotels with exceptional surroundings (Monasterio in Cuzco)
• Resorts and spas: beach hotels, golf hotels, mountain hotels, lodges and retreats
• Vacation-ownership properties and self-catering villas

**Transportation**
• Air, including private charter flights and helicopter chartering
• Rail, both for travelling between destinations with most providers offering first class carriages, or as part of the holiday itself (e.g. Orient Express)
• Water, with luxury cruises a growing luxury segment
• Road, transportation between home and destination ranging from limousine services and valet parking to executive car rentals

**Experience and activities**
• Tours: art, history and shopping are key themes that drive the organisation of travel
• Outdoors: sailing, skiing, adventure and wildlife are special-interest outdoor activities that are becoming increasingly popular in luxury travel

**Companies in the field**
• Wine producers
• Restaurants
• Exclusive accommodation providers: e.g. Kangaroo Beach Lodges, Southern Ocean Lodge, Sea Dragon Lodge
Functional Foods

This section of the Reference Report collates the work undertaken through the project on functional foods, including the PESTLE analysis and tables of main actors in specific markets. The context for this work is described in the Reference Report sections covering the value chain analysis, company assessment, market analysis (see also separate reports and Functional and Luxury Project Literature Review), technology assessment and pathway development group work.

NOTES:

1. Some sections of the initial phases of the project combine analyses for both functional and luxury foods. Check the lists of tables and figures for this Reference Report to locate this information.
2. Some sections of information already included elsewhere in this report are reproduced here where they provide context or essential detail required for interpretation of the information provided.

Introduction

In Phase 1 of this project, the South Australian companies interviewed were found to produce a limited amount of strictly defined functional foods, but have a large range of different healthy and health promoting products, which may or may not have technically added or removed components.

Table A1: Functional foods in South Australia.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Products</th>
<th>Value Chain Participants</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Trade agents/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Importers/Distributors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ingredient Manufacturers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PUFA Ingredients</td>
<td>Forever living products (FLP)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Probiotics</td>
<td>BettaLife Distributors, Born organics, Parmalat, Fleurieu Milk &amp; Yoghurt Company, B-D Farm Paris Creek, Probiotec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prebiotics</td>
<td>BettaLife Distributors, Born organics, Parmalat, Fleurieu Milk &amp; Yoghurt Company, B-D Farm Paris Creek, Probiotec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carotenoids</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aloe Vera Extract</td>
<td>Forever living products (FLP), Organic Aloe Vera, Ten Acre Trading, Priority Health</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polyphenols and Flavonoids</td>
<td>Forever living products</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indigenous Plant Extracts</td>
<td>Tumbeela Native Bushfoods, Perry’s Lemon Myrtle Store, Footeside Farm, Chuulangun Aboriginal Corporation (working with University of South Australia), ITEK Ventures, Galeru Pty Ltd</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Products | Value Chain Participants
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Anti-allergenic Foods</th>
<th>Trade agents / Importers/ Distributors</th>
<th>Ingredient Manufacturer s</th>
<th>Food Manufacturer s</th>
<th>Retailers</th>
<th>Food Service</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lactose Free Foods</td>
<td>Lidells, Slape and Sons, Go Vita - Ingle Farm, Go Vita - Fairview Green, College of Mind Body and Spirit, Butch’s Smallgoods, Copperpot, Golden North Ice Cream, Heidelberg Cakes</td>
<td>Yumi’s Gluten &amp; Dairy Free, Foodland, Coles, Woolworths, IGA, Supa IGA</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other anti-allergen foods</td>
<td>Rilka’s Real Foods, 1-2-3 Gluten Free, Healthy Life, Rainbow Tree, Health Elements Walkerville, Go Vita - Ingle Farm, Go Vita - Fairview Green, College of Mind Body and Spirit, Butch’s Smallgoods, Copperpot, Golden North Ice Cream, Heidelberg Cakes, Slape and sons</td>
<td>Yumi’s Gluten &amp; Dairy Free, Foodland, Coles, Woolworths, IGA, Supa IGA</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Opportunities in functional food

The key opportunities in functional food markets are driven by growing living standards, increasing health awareness, increasing health care expenditures, aging populations, and the increased incidence of medical disorders such as metabolic syndrome.

The main functional food opportunities are identified as:

- Food ingredients, such as dairy based ingredients (e.g. proteins, calcium, vitamin D)
- Free-from products (lactose and gluten free)
- By-products of wine processing (polyphenols and flavonoids)
- Photochemical and plant extracts (carotenoids from algae, indigenous plant extracts and aloe vera extracts)

The functional food opportunities are listed in Table A2.

In addition, opportunities for functional food ingredients in non-food applications, such as in (natural) cosmetics, are worth investigating further. Successful examples of utilising high value plant-based ingredients include Jurlique (http://www.jurlique.com.au/) and Lumene (http://www.lumene.com/). Some of the mentioned examples may not be currently in the focus of South Australian businesses, but given the future-oriented nature of the research, they are mentioned here as they show examples of global growth potential or radical new opportunities.

Collaboration with universities, research organisations and associations could further strengthen the functional food production. For example, Dairy Australia assists manufacturers to understand science on how and why to produce functional dairy foods.

The Functional and Luxury Project Literature Review identified that Australia in general, and South Australia in particular, is regarded as a key player in the food industry in the region. This is because,
historically, Australia has developed itself into a large export-oriented agricultural sector, with strong growth in food, beverage and commodity exports to Asia. Also, Australia’s connections through geographic proximity and trade, and investment and cultural links to the fast growing Asia-Pacific region, offer cost effective service compared to competitors in Europe and North America.

Both these conditions favour South Australia’s position to develop the functional food sector. Building on the current situation, South Australia can be a stable and reliable long-term supplier of fresh produce offering counter-seasonal availability in the Asia-Pacific region.

Table A2. Functional Food Opportunities.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Opportunity area by ingredient</th>
<th>Health Benefit</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Poly-unsaturated fatty acids (PUFAs)</td>
<td>Cardiovascular health, brain health, general health</td>
<td>South Australia’s large aquaculture industry is a prime sourcing point to provide marine based fish oil to the industry. The region also produces sizeable quantities of flax for development of the vegetarian omega-3 space. However DSM controls the global market for omega-3 products and is an aggressive competitor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dairy based ingredients: dairy proteins, bioactive peptides, milk oligosaccharides, calcium, vitamin D</td>
<td>Digestive health, bone health, weight management, blood pressure</td>
<td>Downstream processing of South Australia’s dairy exports provides a large market opportunity for functional dairy ingredients such as proteins and peptides. Dairy companies such as Fonterra (NZ) are revamping their dairy ingredients business to offer fortified dairy products.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Probiotics (health promoting microbes)</td>
<td>Digestive health, immune health</td>
<td>Most probiotic products are produced by dairy industry (e.g. yoghurts, drinks). However yoghurt, the primary end use segment, is an aggressively competitive market with most traditional food manufacturers also competing. Product differentiation will be key for probiotics. There is today an increasing trend for non-dairy probiotic foods (e.g. cereal based, fruit/vegetable juices etc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prebiotic and other fibres (prebiotics are fibres that specifically promote the growth of certain gut microbes)</td>
<td>Digestive health, immune health</td>
<td>South Australia has a large grain industry which is a key source of resistant starch for dietary fibre. There would be potential to produce also other cereal fibre products. Jerusalem artichoke is one key source of prebiotics. However the prebiotic market is also witnessing an influx of new raw material sources, e.g. avocado extract and (Manuka) honey to use.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Opportunity area by ingredient</th>
<th>Health Benefit</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>compete with the ethnic prebiotic trend. Aggressive competition will be observed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aloe Vera extract</td>
<td>Digestive health, cardiovascular health, immune health, bone health</td>
<td>South Australia is a key Aloe Vera producer and could benefit from growing demand for Aloe Vera beverages globally.(^{68})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soy based-derivatives</td>
<td></td>
<td>No cultivation of soy in South Australia but downstream processing using existing technology is an option on importing soy from other states.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Physterols</td>
<td>Digestive health, cardiovascular health, immune health</td>
<td>Utilise the canola oil industry to develop phytosterol extraction capability.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carotenoids</td>
<td></td>
<td>South Australia has a variety of agricultural sources of carotenoids and in addition has a growing algal carotenoid production industry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polyphenols and flavonoids (aside from those in Soy)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Large wine industry provides key raw material source for polyphenols and flavonoids in addition to the presence of these products in other fruits and vegetables grown in the region.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polysaccharidic fibres (beta-glucan)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Small oat producing industry could be used as a raw material source for beta-glucan production</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indigenous plant extracts *)</td>
<td>Antioxidants, cardiovascular health, immune health, micronutrient supplementation, bone health</td>
<td>Australia possesses a wide expanse of indigenous ingredients with potential capabilities and existing small scale production of functional food extracts. These ingredients vary from Lemon Myrtle, typically used as a flavourant but with high sources of dietary calcium (possible bone health drinks) to Anise myrtle with high lutein concentrations (eye health potential). The success of this opportunity depends on the development of research for the local industry to world standards. These include methods such as:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1. Developing the technology needed to grow Australian plants commercially in SA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2. Creating an analytical program to identify the active ingredients of South Australian plants</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3. Developing a breeding program to increase the active ingredients of plants</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4. Conducting clinical trials to prove the efficacy of these ingredients to improve health outcomes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Roadmap for functional food

The preliminary functional food roadmap is presented in Figure A1. Food industry development is heavily driven by changing consumer needs, lifestyles, trends and food preferences. Drivers, trends and changing markets are presented in the top level of the roadmaps. One portrayal of food trends for 2015 is found in Figure A2 on the following page.

Figure A2. Preliminary roadmap for functional food.

Trends

With the help of food innovation and technology, different groups with special nutritional needs can be better served; for example, the aging population is one of the quickest growing consumer groups all over the world. This progression is especially strong in Japan where the proportion of seniors in the population is the greatest among the OECD countries (OECD, 2014). The amount of food eaten often diminishes along with aging, but there should be enough energy, protein, fibre and vitamins (especially vitamin D) even in small food portions. The means to enrich the nutrient
content of a meal without increasing the portion size can be done, for example, by fortifying meals with good quality fibres (e.g. pea or oat fibre) and protein concentrates and fats (Heiniö et al., 2014). Seniors also consider good food packaging to be packaging that is easy to open without tools (Heiniö et al., 2014) – here packaging development and innovation plays a crucial role (see also the ‘Packaging’ section of this Reference Report).

Figure A2. Ten important food trends in 2015 (modified from Mellentin, 2014).

More current global trends impacting food industry are listed in Food Technology journal by the Institute of Food Technologists (Sloan, 201569) and by Baum & Whiteman (2015):

Demand for fresh food
Nearly nine in 10 adults (87%) feel that fresh foods are healthier, and 80% believe that they are tastier; 78% of consumers are making a significant effort to eat more fresh versus processed foods (Technomic, 2014a).

Over the past 10 years, consumption of fresh foods grew 20% to more than 100 billion ‘eatings’ per year. Shoppers are buying more fresh ingredients, up 10% versus three years ago (FMI, 2014). Shoppers also like to cook more from scratch. Consumers increasingly link fresh foods to specific nutritional attributes; 75% of ‘millennials’ associate meat with protein and iron; 62%, with energy; and 53%, with building physical strength (FMI, 2015).

Changing lifestyles and eating habits
Changes in lifestyles, eating patterns, and demographics are creating new rules for marketing and packaging and are motivating new food product purchases.

---

69 Statistical references in this section are indirect sources from Sloan, 2015.
Today, more and more eating occasions are alone. Even in multi-person households, 39% of eating occasions are solo (Hartman, 2013). Even if people like fresh food and cooking, the family meal continues to erode. Only 27% of family meals include children.

However, in 28% of families, the family members will eat the same meal for dinner even if they each eat alone and at different times (Hartman, 2013). Developing food products for consumers to take to eat away from home is another fast-emerging opportunity. In 2014, 23% of consumers brought lunch from home, and 8% brought breakfast (FMI, 2014).

The motivation for each specific snack and mini-meal occasion represents a new series of market differentiators for the explosive snack and on-the-go meal sector. Yoghurt, bakery snacks, bars, dairy products, and fruit-based smoothies are the top morning snacks; salty snacks, snack nuts, chocolate candy, crackers, and cookies are popular in the afternoon (Wyatt, 2014).

Health is an important snack selection factor for half (50%) of adults (Technomic, 2014b). Refrigerated juices/drinks, smoothies, yoghurt, nutrition bars, trail mixes, specialty nut butters, and popcorn were among the fastest-growing healthy snacks in 2013 (Wyatt, 2014). Nearly half of consumers (45%) look for snacks that go beyond basic nutrition (Wyatt, 2014). One in five people buy snacks for an energy boost or to improve their mood; 17% do so to manage weight (Nielsen, 2015). Therefore the functional food industry has lots of opportunities in snack development.

Exclusion diets
Consumers are experimenting with alternative eating styles. In 2014, one third of adults tried a specialty regimen, while 8% tried gluten-free, 7% tried lactose-free, 6% tried raw/living foods, 5% tried dairy-free, and 5% tried a juice cleanse (FMI, 2014).

Eggs are one of the most popular meat alternatives, prepared by 78% of consumers, 61% serve beans, lentils, or legumes, 28% serve veggie burgers, 28% serve quinoa/other whole grains, 18% serve seeds/nuts, and 14% serve tofu or tempeh (FMI, 2015). Seventeen percent of adults are making some effort to follow a partially vegetarian diet; those aged 18–24 are most likely to do so. The number of consumers who avoid all animal products is also growing.

In 2014, 44% of adults felt gluten-free foods were healthier, down from 60% in 2012 (Technomic, 2014a). Gluten-free products currently account for less than 1% of total bakery sales (IDDBA, 2015). Food restrictions, intolerances or allergies have a lot of influence on food choices for one in 10 shoppers (Packaged Facts, 2014a). Food allergies in children are on the rise; 4.1 million kids under the age of 17 suffer from diagnosed food allergies. Milk, peanuts, tree nuts, eggs, fish, crustacean shellfish, wheat, and soy remain the “big 8” allergens (U.S. Dept. of Health and Human Services, 2013). Food intolerance was the second-fastest-growing global positioning for functional foods and beverages (Euromonitor, 2014).

Natural food
Consumers want more local foods and beverages, more natural foods, and more minimally processed foods with a minimal amount of preservatives.

For example, natural sweeteners (e.g., agave, honey, concentrated fruit juice, and maple syrup) are among the hot culinary ingredients for 2015 (NRA, 2014). Sustainability is also a significant issue, for example in seafood, and the seafood industry’s focus on seafood sustainability has been growing for more than a decade. Oysters are among the biggest trends in current luxury food domain; Baum & Whiteman (2015) argue that oysters are currently being rediscovered and products being
modernised. Trendsetters eat oysters with lemongrass cocktail sauce, kimchi or exotic dressings such as chorizo butter.

**Whole food**

When ingredients that deliver healthy whole food nutrition match up with cutting-edge culinary trends, the results are interesting. Food businesses could take more advantage of the added nutritional benefits when featuring fruits, vegetables, grains, nuts, legumes, or seeds.

While gluten-free has drawn attention to digestive issues, its biggest long term benefit may be the attention it has brought to ancient, ethnic, and alternative whole grains and flours. Fibre and whole grain are among the most sought after food ingredients, and shoppers want to switch to healthier bread, healthier pasta and healthier crackers (FMI, 2014).

Similarly, non-wheat noodles and pasta (e.g., quinoa, rice, or buckwheat) and non-wheat flours (e.g. peanut, millet, barley, and rice) are in the top list of side dish culinary trends. High protein nuts and seeds are also making significant nutritional contributions to a wide variety of products, ranging from cereal and oatmeal to bars and beverages.

**Ready meals**

Consumers spend less time preparing meals than they have previously. Meals that stretch the meat component (e.g., pasta, soup, casseroles) are the key products within this trend. Younger shoppers are also more likely to have increased their consumption of ethnic dishes, and marinated and value-added meats (FMI, 2015).

Take-and-bake fresh pizzas and assemble-at-home bakery products are still very hot trends (IDDBA, 2015), but consumers are also paying more attention to nutrition of their meals. Offering more flavoured basics (e.g. pasta, butter) that replace the need for a variety of spices is another significant trend.

**Dieting and weight watching**

More and more consumers are watching their diet for general health reasons, to lose weight, to limit, fat, sugar, sodium, etc., to prevent future medical issues or to treat a current medical condition, and for a real or perceived food allergy or intolerance (Packaged Facts, 2014).

For example in the U.S., 66 million adults are trying to lose weight and 31.7 million are trying to maintain their weight. Simultaneously, vitamin D, vitamin C, calcium, omega-3s, and B vitamins top the list of nutrients consumers are making a significant effort to consume. Potassium, magnesium, choline, fibre, prebiotics, and iron are the hot ‘up-and-coming’ nutritionals. Fortified with vitamins/minerals are among the ‘must have’ beverage attributes for 2015 (Jacobsen, 2015). There is also growing interest in more heavily fortified and ‘complete’ meal replacement foods and drinks. These trends emphasise the widening opportunities for functional foods.

**Increasing use of technology**

Baum & Whiteman (2015) choose technology to be the food trend of the year 2015 and beyond. Especially in restaurants, we’re immersed in ‘front-facing technology’ or ‘guest-facing technology’: all sorts of devices and programs that interface directly with the consumer. Businesses experiment, for example, with tablets, electronic wallets and smartphones. Convenience and speed are obvious benefits.

However, the real drivers are, firstly, new generations of customers who want to customise everything in sight, and secondly, increasing labour costs tied to health care and living wage advocacy. When labour gets too expensive, previously unaffordable technology can become more
attractive. On the more radical front, by using wearable technology such as Google Glass or Microsoft HoloLens face recognition software, restaurants, hospitality venues and food shops can provide their customers with new experiences and personalised service.

As noted in the technology assessment, digitalisation affects the whole value chain of food business, from raw materials to product development, processing, packaging, logistics, distribution, marketing and sales. Digitalisation helps to manage the enterprise more efficiently (e.g. PwC, 2011), it creates market opportunities for food companies by connecting them with digitally empowered customers and by improving understanding of needs of consumers in emerging markets, and enables value chain transformation.

Prosumerism
Prosumers are today’s leading influencers and market drivers. Prosumerism refers to the phenomenon that today’s consumer is no longer a ‘passive market’, instead he or she can become involved in the design and manufacture of products, so products could be made to individual specification.

This shift from consumers to prosumers is already happening in many market areas, including food (Gunellus, 2010; Troye et al., 2012). Beyond their own economic impact, prosumers are important because they influence the brand choices and consumption behaviours of others.

Prosumerism has links to mass customisation, in which everybody is in effect a member of a niche market; something Internet e-commerce is encouraging through cutting out the middleman between maker and buyer. 3D printing is also among the enabling technologies of prosumer and mass customisation movement.

In the context of wider socioeconomic development, prosumerism is a part of the ‘sharing economy’ (see Dervodeja et al. 2013), a socio-economic system that is built around the sharing of human and physical resources which actualises in peer to peer transactions, in leasing and sharing business models, and in changes in consumer behaviour.

Private sector innovation and start-up companies have an important role in building the sharing economy as brokers and facilitators between peers; they allow consumers to fulfil new roles and tasks that are normally conducted by businesses. The trend of business models for sharing and leasing has several implications. The trend anticipates:

a) the lowering costs of products, especially luxury and rarely used products
b) the reduction of risks and responsibilities of customers compared to ownership
c) increasing importance of customer service (e.g. the capability to maintain and repair products) - food is said to be the next frontier for the sharing economy (Kamenez, 2013)

The impacts of these factors are most tangible in the case of food waste. Globally, 30 to 50% of all food produced is lost or wasted between crop and plate—that’s between 1.2 and 2 billion tons. The consumer-side food surplus could be an opportunity for the new sharing economy; innovative start-ups are already helping consumers get rid of unused, but still edible food.

For example (Kamenez, 2013), Ampleharvest.org connects home gardeners with food pantries and has given away more than 20 million tons of produce, while Casserole is a site currently operating in

---

two towns in the county of Surrey, England, and allows home cooks to give away extra portions of a meal they are cooking. So far the Casserole site is serving a number of elderly people (like peer to peer Meals on Wheels). Foodsharing is a German site that allows individuals, retailers, farmers, and restaurants to post and give away unused food; Le Loca is an app that allows restaurants with unused seats (and unused portions of lasagne) to offer steep last-minute discounts to eager diners.

**Regulation**

For the functional food industry, regulation is one of the key drivers. Regulation both protects consumers and promotes innovation and ensures fair competition. In the context of this study it impacts especially on nutrition and health claims of functional food.

When food business operators market their products, they wish to be able to highlight the particular beneficial effects of the products in relation to health and nutrition on the product label or in advertising. Rules on nutrition and health claims vary in different countries, for example European Union established its legal framework in 2007. Regulation applies, for example, to nutrition claims such as ‘low fat’, ‘high fibre’ and to health claims such as ‘Vitamin D is needed for the development of bone’. The objective of these rules is to ensure that any claim made on a food’s labelling, presentation or advertising is clear, accurate and based on scientific evidence.

In Australia, a new standard to regulate nutrition content claims and health claims on food labels and in advertisements became law in 2013. Food businesses had to comply with the new standard from 18 January 2016.

Understanding and complying with the regulations in Asian target markets requires expertise and, in many countries in recent years, the regulation framework has undergone substantial changes. For example, in Japan, the FOSHU (Foods for Specific Health Uses) regime has been strict and often deemed costly – in 2015-2016 it is undergoing wide changes that will open up the market and increase competition.

**Actors and actions**

Actors and actions are found in the middle level of roadmap (Figure A1). Currently, less than 10% of South Australian food companies operate in the functional food domain (see the ‘Industry Analysis’ section of this Reference Report) and their products represent mainly the standard functional food such as oats, juices with vitamins, added calcium or gluten-free foods, and high quality and premium products with some luxury elements.

The key objective for current actors is to create more value added products from local raw materials and increase both local and national market presence and in Asian export markets.

Most of the technology and equipment used in South Australia comes from overseas and global technology providers continue to be the main actors in technology development. Both limited funds and limited local know-how have restricted the spreading of new food technologies and innovations in this State, and the key objective related to technology is to strengthen local capabilities in technology utilisation.

Consumers, as active food ecosystem actors, will play an important role in the future. As noted above, consumers are becoming prosumers who influence and lead future markets. ‘Foodies’ –

---


people with a particular interest in food and beverages – are already an important movement shaping the frontiers of both specialty and mainstream foods. People generally enjoy talking about new or interesting foods, watching cooking shows, purchasing specialty foods for everyday home meals, and trying new menu items in restaurants (Sloan, 2013). The main objectives for consumers include both improving their health, well-being and longevity (functional) and experiences and accomplishment (luxury).

Solutions, product and applications in functional food

Generally, the development of functional food with physiological beneficial effects contributes to the societal challenges related to health, demographic change and wellbeing. In South Australia, in the short term, this basically refers to adding functional ingredients to products. In the long term, manufacturing functional ingredients is an opportunity, but only as a secondary target.

Main products include functional and lifestyle foods to meet diversifying requirements of consumers. The scope for such products and solutions is to develop functional foods aimed at meeting diversifying dietary requirements of different age groups, life styles and health conditions. This can be boosted, by combining several functionalities in one food product for example, such as proper textures, high nutritional quality and ease of use in the case of savoury foods, and having the capability to improve health, well-being and longevity (European Commission, 2014). In addition, functional food can positively influence various physiological pathways related to stress reduction (Hamer et al., 2005) or cognitive functions of human brains.

However, there are specific technical and industrial challenges, resulting mainly from gaps in technological capacities. To strengthen the capacity in this domain, attention should be paid to (modified from European Commission, 2014):

- Improving food products to fulfil nutritional, sensory and textural needs of the elderly and other special consumer groups.
- Development of food structures with physiological beneficial effects.
- Development of tailor-made products to support the ‘healthy’ gut microbiota.
- Improving effects of diet/dietary constituents in delaying/preventing the decline of cognitive functions in the aging human brain.
- Improving the understanding of the variation in human metabolic energy efficiency.
- Improving understanding on the role of diet, for example the effect of the mother’s diet in pregnancy on the outcome of offspring, treatment of low-grade inflammation, drug delivery, etc.
- Development of food processing technologies for functionality and nutrient security.
- Development of logistics and e-commerce solutions needed for differentiated lifestyle food products.

Food packaging innovations and solutions target extending product shelf life, enhancing consumer convenience, and ensuring product safety and sustainability.

Enabling technologies for functional food

Enabling technologies, shown in the preliminary roadmap for functional foods (Figure A1) were assessed in Phase 2 of the project. In summary, the functional food segment is dependent on advanced manufacturing, advanced materials and industrial biotechnology, which may help in introducing more desirable traits in food by altering the food’s structure or nutrients content (e.g. the tailored addition of components such as antioxidants at defined nano-scale quantities through the use of nano-emulsions, nano-composites, etc.) (European Commission, 2014).
Food processing technologies are needed for higher quality products, improved product safety, and longer shelf life (e.g. Non-thermal preservation technologies such as High Pressure Processing (HPP) and Pulsed Electric Field (PEF)). Biotechnology helps to deal with emerging challenges, including those arising from climate change, pressure on global food supplies and the management of pests and diseases, (for example, reducing chemical use).

In addition, specified functional ingredient production technologies, such as extraction, are needed in order to manufacture ingredients for functional food and widen South Australia’s capacity for operating in the functional food value chain. However, manufacturing functional ingredients is not seen as a main opportunity for South Australian food industry.

**Market assessments for functional food**

The following tables provide detailed assessments of the factors affecting the functional food market segment in specific markets: China, Hong Kong, Singapore, Japan, Malaysia, and South Korea.

**China**

The following analyses comprise:

- PESTLE for Functional Food in China
- Functional Food Actors in China

**PESTLE analysis: Functional food in China**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Functional food</th>
<th>PESTLE Analysis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PUFA Ingredients</td>
<td>Political</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Stable government with an increasing focus on anti-corruption drives.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Growing interest in outward FDI (foreign direct investment) to foster economic ties with the West.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6 % of GDP is spent on treating diseases driving rising expenditure on healthcare costs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Functional food</td>
<td>PESTLE Analysis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Political</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Probiotics</strong></td>
<td>As above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and prebiotics</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Carotenoids</strong></td>
<td>As above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Aloe Vera</strong></td>
<td>As above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extract</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Functional food</td>
<td>Political</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polyphenols and Flavonoids</td>
<td>As above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indigenous Plant Extracts</td>
<td>As above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gluten-Free Foods</td>
<td>As above</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^74\) Cummins & Roberts-Thompson, 2009.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Functional food</th>
<th>PESTLE Analysis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Political</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lactose Free Foods</td>
<td>As above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anti-allergenic foods</td>
<td>As above</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

75 Wang et al. 1984.
## Value Chain Actors of Functional Food in China

### PUFA Ingredients
- **Trade agents / Importers/ Distributors**: Qingdao Samuels Industrial and Commercial Company, Ltd. (imports Martek DHA for use in Feihei Dairy, Mengniu Dairy products), Hubei Fuxing Biotechnology, Ruihua Hexin International (Ocean Nutritions exclusive distributor selling to companies such as Wilmar China for cooking oil fortification), Neptune Technologies & Bioressources (local sales office).
- **Food Manufacturers**: Wilmar China, Canton American Flower Lounge Livestock Company (CAFL), Lark Dairies, Feihe Dairy, Yashili International Holdings Ltd
- **Retailers**: N/A

### Prebiotics
- **Trade agents / Importers/ Distributors**: Sethic China (Orafti), Shandong Yuchenghuanyu Group, Shandong Tianlyuan, Shandong Duqing, Shenzhen Neptunus Bioengineering Co. Ltd, New Francisco Biotechnology Corporation (NFBC)
- **Ingredient Manufacturers**: Jiangmen Quantum Hi-tech, Shandong Baolingbao, Yunnan Tianyuan, Yunnan New Francisco, Guangxi Huaaoli, Shangdong Longli, Shanxi Yishengyuan, Qinhai Weide Bio-tech, Jiangxi Jingcheng Tangchun, Jiangsu Liangfeng Fods, Shandong Tianmei Bio-tech
- **Food Manufacturers**: Mengniu Dairy Company, Yili Group Bright Dairy, Beijing Sanyuan Food Co. Ltd., Harbin Baiai Technology Co. Ltd., Shandong Longlive Biotechnology Public Co. Ltd., Kuaijishan Shaoxing Wine Co. Ltd
- **Retailers**: Carrefour China, China, Tesco China, China Resource Vanguard Co. Ltd, Lianhua Trading Group, 7-Eleven China, Lawson's China, China City Shop Supermarket, Ole stores, Beijing Hualian Supermarket

### Probiotics
- **Trade agents / Importers/ Distributors**: NBTY China, GNC China, Guangzhou Biostime Inc (along with Lallemand), Asia United (China) Medical Co. Limited (Biogaia)
- **Ingredient Manufacturers**: *Culture producers*: DuPont China, Chr. Hansen China, Lallemand China, Harbin Meihua Biotechnology Co., GenMont Biotech Incorporation, Sinobio Technology (Shanghai) Co., Ltd.
  - *Mainly supplement producers*: TSI Group Ltd, China-Biotics, Inc, Ltd, Hunan Kohl Biotechnology Co., Ltd, Sabinsa China (also symbiotic; combination of pro- and prebiotics)
- **Retailers**: Carrefour China, Wal-Mart China, Tesco China, China Resource Vanguard Co. Ltd, Lianhua Trading Group, 7-Eleven China, Lawson's China, China City Shop Supermarket, Ole stores, Beijing Hualian Supermarket
- **Retailers**: N/A
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Products</th>
<th>Trade agents / Importers / Distributors</th>
<th>Ingredient Manufacturers</th>
<th>Food Manufacturers</th>
<th>Retailers</th>
<th>Food Service</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Indigenous Plant Extracts</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Value Chain Actors of Functional Food in China

| Products            | Trade agents / Importers/ Distributors                                                                 | Ingredient Manufacturers                                                                 | Food Manufacturers                                                                 | Retailers                                                                                       | Food Service                                                                                   |
|---------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Anti-allergen foods | Hutchison China Meditech Ltd, Xile Lier Co. Ltd, Shanghai Uniac Industrial Co. Ltd, Holy Flame International trade Ltd, China Realong Int’l Limited | BIOFarm, PEDON GROUP China, Gusto Fine Foods, Strictly Cookies, Mondelez China (Enjoy life foods), General Mills China, Amy’s Kitchen China, Heinz China | Cityshop, City Super, Fields China, Fresh Mart, Ole, Carrefour China, Wal-Mart China, Tesco China, China Resource Vanguard Co. Ltd, Lianhua Trading Group, 7-Eleven China, Lawson’s China, City Shop Supermarket, Beijing Hualian Supermarket, Yihaojian, Tmall | N/A                                                                                                                                           |
The following analyses comprise:

- PESTLE for Functional Food in Hong Kong
- Functional Food Actors in Hong Kong

**PESTLE analysis: Functional food in Hong Kong**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Products</th>
<th>PESTLE Analysis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| PUFA Ingredients| **Political**
|                 | Mass protests in Hong Kong for democratisation of election threaten to disrupt its reputation as a haven for global investment. |
|                 | **Economic**
|                 | Hong Kong continues to be a top-rated economy in the world, although its economic freedom score declined by 0.5 point since 2014. It still remains as one of the most open economies for international trade and investment. |
|                 | **Socio-cultural**
|                 | Health awareness is on the rise in Hong Kong and this has fuelled the growth of health and wellness in the country. Hong Kong is one of the top spenders by household consumption on health ingredients such as omega-3. |
|                 | **Technological**
|                 | Limited technical expertise present in the company for production of supplements containing PUFA. |
|                 | **Environmental**
|                 | No major environmental concerns |
|                 | **Legal**
|                 | If products contain medicine or claim to have medicinal properties, then they are required to be registered as Pharmaceutical products. Rules also prohibit advertising claims that a product has curative or preventive effects. Manufacturers and sellers have to ensure that the food is fit for human consumption and comply with statutory requirements. |

| Probiotic       | **Political**
|                 | As above |
|                 | **Economic**
|                 | As above |
|                 | **Socio-cultural**
|                 | Health awareness is on the rise in Hong Kong and this has fuelled the growth of health and wellness in the country. Hong Kong is one of the top spenders by household consumption on healthy ingredients. |
|                 | **Technological**
|                 | Market leaders in probiotics have presence in Hong Kong thus contributing to the technological capability of the country to produce probiotics. |
|                 | **Environmental**
|                 | As above |
|                 | **Legal**
<p>|                 | As above |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Products</th>
<th>PESTLE Analysis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Political</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prebiotic</td>
<td>As above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carotenoids</td>
<td>As above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aloe Vera Extract</td>
<td>None-applicable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polyphenols and Flavonoids</td>
<td>As above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indigenous Plant Extracts</td>
<td>As above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Products</td>
<td>PESTLE Analysis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Political</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anti-allergenic foods</td>
<td>As above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>None-applicable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gluten Free</td>
<td>As above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>None-applicable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lactose Free</td>
<td>As above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>None-applicable</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Functional food actors in Hong Kong

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRODUCTS</th>
<th>Functional Food Actors in Hong Kong</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Trade agents / Importers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Functional Ingredients</td>
<td>PUFA Ingredients</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prebiotic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Probiotic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Carotenoids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Aloe Vera Extract</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Polyphenols and Flavonoids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Free-from Foods</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRODUCTS</td>
<td>Funcational Food Actors in Hong Kong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Trade agents / Importers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gluten Free</td>
<td>Hong Kong and Shanghai Wine and Spirits Company, Perry Commerce Limited, Organic Experience management Group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lactose Free</td>
<td>Apis Cerana Limited</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Singapore

The following analyses comprise:

- PESTLE for Functional Food in Singapore
- Functional Food Actors in Hong Kong

**PESTLE analysis: Functional food in Singapore**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Political</th>
<th>Economic</th>
<th>Socio-cultural</th>
<th>Technological</th>
<th>Legal</th>
<th>Environmental</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>PUFA Ingredients</strong></td>
<td>Health Promotion Board (HPB) in Singapore launched the Finest Food Programme in 2011, a one-stop resource hub to equip industry players venturing into the functional food market with the necessary knowledge and skill.</td>
<td>Increasing wealth and a busier lifestyle has led to many Singaporean seeking health supplements and nutritional components to their daily meals, to stay on top of their recommended intakes. Many of these products are sold through multi-level marketing schemes. Large supermarkets and hypermarkets have begun to increase shelf space for organic/health products thus increasing consumer acceptance of these products. Online procurement of these products is an increasing trend in this market. Consumers tend place a premium based on country of origin, with Australia, North America and Europe considered premium locations. There is an growing trend towards co-locating food service and food retail outlets specialising in health/organic foods.</td>
<td>The most popular association with formulated Omega-3 products is in infant formula, dairy products and eggs.</td>
<td>Dominated by Multinationals, with mature formulation capabilities (microencapsulations)</td>
<td>All health claims / nutrient function claims are regulated by the Ministry of Health which has detailed guidelines.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Probiotics &amp; Prebiotics</strong></td>
<td>The Health Promotion Board (HPB) also provides grants worth more than $10,000 to Singapore's functional foods industry, which can be used by food manufacturers to tap the expertise of food scientists and turn ideas into market realities.</td>
<td></td>
<td>Probiotic</td>
<td>Dominated by Multinationals, with mature formulation capabilities</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Prebiotic</td>
<td>A*STAR’s Genome Institute of Singapore (GIS) and Nutricia Research (Danone) have joined forces to investigate the health benefits of prebiotics, probiotics and synbiotics.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Probiotic</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Prebiotic such as Inulin and FOS are not as widely understood in terms of their health benefits. Given the high fibre content in Singaporean diets, the perceived need for dietary fibre as a formulated ingredient is low. Formula feeding is common; Infant formulas are typically enriched with prebiotics Prebiotics enjoy greater visibility in the health supplement markets, which should have a positive spill over effect into the mass consumer market.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Product</td>
<td>Political</td>
<td>Economic</td>
<td>Socio-cultural</td>
<td>Technological</td>
<td>Legal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carotenoids</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Fairly under developed market. Significant scope for consumer education.</td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aloe Vera Extract</td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
<td></td>
<td>Typically consumed through beverages. Aloe Vera used in personal care is far more developed than its use in F&amp;B formulated products.</td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polyphenol &amp; Flavonoids</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>High penetration of green tea products in Singapore, the acceptance of polyphenols is very high. However polyphenol is not marketed as an active ingredient.</td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indigenous Plant Extracts</td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
<td></td>
<td>There are no existing dynamics for Australia indigenous plant extracts, but should they be introduced, they are likely to compete with domestic/traditional plant extracts such as ginseng/sansam roots etc.</td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gluten-Free Food</td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
<td>Gluten-free consumers constitute a very small minority in Singapore. Recent attention is driven more by consumers seeking a healthier, low-carb diet than a medical condition, except in the case of certain migrant populations.</td>
<td>These products are not widely available in Singapore except through natural/organic retailers.</td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lactose-Free Food</td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
<td>Lactose-free consumers constitute a very small minority in Singapore, although the rate of mild to moderate lactose intolerance is likely to be very high. It is possible that the reason for the under developed lactose free food market in this market is due to lack of awareness of lactose intolerance.</td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anti-allergenic Foods</td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Functional food actors in Singapore

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRODUCTS</th>
<th>PUFA Ingredients</th>
<th>Probiotics and Prebiotics</th>
<th>Carotenoids</th>
<th>Aloe Vera Extract</th>
<th>Polyphenols and Flavonoids</th>
<th>Indigenous Plant Extracts</th>
<th>Anti-allergenic foods</th>
<th>Gluten Free</th>
<th>Lactose Free</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Food Companies</td>
<td>Abbott (Similac), Fraser and Neave, Nestle (Nan, S26), Seng Choon, Chew’s Group, Gardenia (QAF)</td>
<td>Probiotic Malaysia Dairy Industries (Vitagen), Abbott (Similac) Nestle (Nan, S26) Mead Johnson (Enfangrow)</td>
<td>Pokka Corporation, Abbott (Similac)</td>
<td>Malaysian Dairy Industries (Marigold), Pokka Corporation</td>
<td>Pokka Corporation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

137
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRODUCTS</th>
<th>PUFA Ingredients</th>
<th>Probiotics and Prebiotics</th>
<th>Carotenoids</th>
<th>Aloe Vera Extract</th>
<th>Polyphenols and Flavonoids</th>
<th>Indigenous Plant Extracts</th>
<th>Anti-allergenic foods</th>
<th>Gluten Free</th>
<th>Lactose Free</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Food Service</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zenxin Organic Food, MEIDI-YA Supermarket, Giant, Nutrimax Organic Store</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Nutrimax Organic Store, MEIDI-YA Supermarket</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delcie’s, Veganburger</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Delcie’s, Veganburger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jonatha n’s, Glee Kitchen, Delcie’s, Veganburger</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Japan
The following analyses comprise:

- PESTLE for Functional Food in Japan
- Functional Food Actors in Japan

**PESTLE for functional food in Japan**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Functional Food</th>
<th>PESTLE Analysis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PUFA Ingredients</td>
<td>Political: Stable government with an increasing focus on aging population and austerity measures. Shringling of the workforce due to aging population placing heavy burden on the economy. Austerity measures driving consumers to focus increasingly on quality over quantity. Over 25% of the population is over 65 years of age. Large traditional fish consuming market finds it easy to accept the taste of omega-3 products. Population growing at -0.5%.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Probiotics and Prebiotics</td>
<td>Political: As above. Economic: As above. Socio-cultural: Over 25% of the population is over 65 years of age. Population focusing on digestive health.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carotenoids</td>
<td>Political: As above. Economic: As above. Socio-cultural: Over 25% of the population is over 65 years of age. Increasing focus on antioxidant benefits and its potential health benefits drives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Functional Food</td>
<td>PESTLE Analysis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Political</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aloe Vera Extract</td>
<td>As above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polyphenols and Flavonoids</td>
<td>As above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indigenous Plant Extracts</td>
<td>As above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gluten-Free Foods</td>
<td>As above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

76 Cummins & Roberts-Thompson, 2009.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Functional Food</th>
<th>PESTLE Analysis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Political</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lactose Free Foods</td>
<td>As above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anti-allergenic foods</td>
<td>As above</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Functional food actors in Japan

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Products</th>
<th>Functional food actors in Japan</th>
<th>Trade agents / Importers/ Distributors</th>
<th>Ingredient and Food Manufacturers</th>
<th>Retailers</th>
<th>Food Service</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PUFA Ingredients</td>
<td>Pivotal Scientific, San-Ei Gen F.F.I. Inc.</td>
<td>Fluxome Ingredients, DuPont Nutrition, Maruha Nichiro Foods, Bizen Chemical</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Lawson's Japan, 7-Eleven Japan, Aeon supermarkets, H2O retailing, Ito-Yokado, UNY, Life supermarkets, Maruetsu retail, Max Value retail</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Probiotics</td>
<td>Ajinomoto (distributor for Danone), OMNL Japan, Nippon access, Biogaia japan, Valio Japan</td>
<td>Yakult, Meiji Diary, Morinaga Dairy, Danone japan, Takanashi Milk products, Nestle Japan, House Wellness, Chr Hansen Japan, DuPont Nutrition, Amino Up, Snow Brand Milk</td>
<td>Lawson's Japan, 7-Eleven Japan, Aeon supermarkets, H2O retailing, Ito-Yokado, UNY, Life supermarkets, Maruetsu retail, Max Value retail</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carotenoids</td>
<td>San-Ei Gen F.F.I. Inc,Algatech Japan, Marubeni Corporation, TSI Health Sciences, ET Horn Japan</td>
<td>Fuji Chemical, Otsuka Pharmaceuticals, Asahi Kaisei, Ajinomoto Nutrition, Suntory Beverages</td>
<td>As above</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aloe Vera Extract</td>
<td>EssensWorld Japan, Nippon Forever Living Products, Naturally Plus Co. Ltd.</td>
<td>Meiji Diary, Morinaga Dairy, Danone japan, Takanashi Milk products, Nestle Japan, House Wellness, Fremo Japan</td>
<td>As above</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indigenous Plant Extracts</td>
<td>Currently no major sales but potential to use the plant extract suppliers (polyphenols and Aloe Vera to distribute indigenous extracts- demand however will be mainly in the end product space initially)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gluten-Free Foods</td>
<td>San-J Japan, FBC Japan, Elpeto Products, Nippon Access</td>
<td>Tengu Natural Foods, Yamabuki Shiro, Seika Foods, Kikkoman Corporation, WeI.Pac Japan</td>
<td>Family Mart, Lawson’s Japan, 7-Eleven Japan, Aeon supermarkets, H2O retailing, Ito-Yokado, UNY, Life supermarkets, Maruetsu retail, Max Value retail</td>
<td>Sukiya Japan, Matsuya Japan, Yoshinoya Japan</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Products</td>
<td>Functional food actors in Japan</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Trade agents / Importers/ Distributors</td>
<td>Ingredient and Food Manufacturers</td>
<td>Retailers</td>
<td>Food Service</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anti-allergen foods</td>
<td>San-J Japan, FBC Japan, Elpoto Products, Nippon Access</td>
<td>Saniku Foods, Asahi Foods, Kikkoman Corporation, Meiraku Group, Kagome Health, Sokusha Co Ltd, Glico Beverages, Mitoku Company, Marusanai Co Ltd</td>
<td>Family Mart, Lawson’s Japan, 7-Eleven Japan, Aeon supermarkets, H2O retailing, Ito-Yokado, UNY, Life supermarkets, Maruetsu retail, Max Value retail</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Malaysia

The following analyses comprise:

- PESTLE for Functional Food in Malaysia
- Functional Food Actors in Malaysia

### PESTLE for functional food in Malaysia

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Products</th>
<th>Political</th>
<th>Economic</th>
<th>Socio-cultural</th>
<th>Technological</th>
<th>Legal</th>
<th>Environmental</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PUFA Ingredients</td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
<td>The general food and beverage market in Malaysia is estimated at RM30 billion. Trade sources estimated functional foods consist about 40% of total processed and retail packed food and drinks markets. Functional foods and drinks surface in the local market during 1990s when local producers and ASEAN-based multinational food companies competed to introduce new product lines to create new niches, capitalising on the emerging health trends at that time and market expansion. Many of these products are sold through multi-level marketing schemes. Large supermarkets and hypermarkets have begun to increase shelf space for organic/health products thus increasing consumer acceptance of these products.</td>
<td>The most popular association with formulated Omega-3 products is in infant formula, dairy products and eggs.</td>
<td>Dominated by Multinationals, with mature formulation capabilities (microencapsulations)</td>
<td>All health claims / nutrient function claims are regulated by the Ministry of Health which has detailed guidelines.</td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Probiotics &amp; Prebiotics</td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
<td>Probiotics</td>
<td>The strength of market leading brands (Yakult and Vitagen) has established a market for probiotics. Prebiotics Prebiotics such as Inulin and FOS are not as widely understood in terms of their health benefits. Given the high fibre content in Malaysian diets, the perceived need for dietary fibre as a formulated ingredient is low. Prebiotics enjoy greater visibility in the health supplement markets, which should have a positive spill over effect into the mass consumer market.</td>
<td>Dominated by Multinationals, with mature formulation capabilities.</td>
<td></td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carotenoids</td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
<td>Online procurement of these products is an increasing trend in this market. Consumers tend to place a premium based on country of origin.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Products</td>
<td>Political</td>
<td>Economic</td>
<td>Socio-cultural</td>
<td>Technological</td>
<td>Legal</td>
<td>Environmental</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aloe Vera Extract</td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
<td>origin, with Australia, North America and Europe considered premium locations. There is a growing trend towards co-locating food service and food retail outlets specialising in health/organic foods. Typically consumed through beverages. Aloe Vera used in personal care is far more developed than its use in food and beverage.</td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polyphenol &amp; Flavonoids</td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
<td>High penetration of green tea products in Malaysia; the acceptance of polyphenols is very high. However polyphenol is not marketed as an active ingredient.</td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indigenous Plant</td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
<td>There are no existing dynamics for Australian indigenous plant extracts, but should they be introduced, they are likely to compete with domestic/traditional plant extracts such as ginseng/sansam roots etc.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gluten-Free Food</td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
<td>Increasing wealth and a busier lifestyle has led to many urban Malaysians seeking health supplements and nutritional components to their daily meals, to stay on top of their recommended intakes. Gluten-free consumers constitute a very small minority in Malaysia. Recent attention is driven more by consumers seeking a healthier, low-carb diet than a medical condition. Celiac disease is probably at the same level as in China.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lactose-Free Food</td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
<td>Although liquid milk is commonly consumed in Malaysia, lactose-free consumers constitute currently a very small minority in Malaysia. About 90% of Malaysian are lactose mal-absorbers. These products are not widely available in Malaysia except through natural/organic retailers.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

79 Asmawi et al. 2006.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Products</th>
<th>Political</th>
<th>Economic</th>
<th>Socio-cultural</th>
<th>Technological</th>
<th>Legal</th>
<th>Environmental</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Anti-allergenic Foods</td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Functional food actors in Malaysia

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRODUCTS</th>
<th>PUFA Ingredients</th>
<th>Probiotics and Prebiotics</th>
<th>Carotenoids</th>
<th>Aloe Vera Extract</th>
<th>Polyphenols and Flavonoids</th>
<th>Indigenous Plant Extracts</th>
<th>Other anti-allergic foods</th>
<th>Gluten Free</th>
<th>Lactose Free</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Trade agents / Importers</strong></td>
<td>Dairy Farm Group, DPO Malaysia</td>
<td>Probiotics: Danisco, DPO Malaysia&lt;br&gt;Prebiotics: Danisco, Horeca Foods, DPO Malaysia</td>
<td>Carotech, GBA Global</td>
<td>Blue Oasis (Why not?)</td>
<td>Biotropics Malaysia, Eiple (Juan Ho Marketing), Hai-O, DPO Malaysia</td>
<td>Dairy Farm Group</td>
<td>Dairy Farm Group</td>
<td>Dairy Farm Group, Gann Teck Kar Foods, Country Farm Organics</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Manufacturers</strong></td>
<td>Dutch Lady Milk (Nutriplan), Nestlé Malaysia (Cerelac), Fraser and Neave, BiO- LiFE, AIM Food Manufacturing, LTK Omega Plus, QL Poultry Farms, QL Eggs, Lam Soon, Gardenia (QAF)</td>
<td>Probiotics: Dutch Lady Milk (Dutch lady), Malaysia Milk&lt;br&gt;Prebiotics: Sendirian Berhad (Vitagen), Yaktul Malaysia, Danone Dunex Malaysia (Dunex), Nestle (Cerelac), QD Herbs&lt;br&gt;Carotenoids: QD Herbs Pokka Corporation, JC Chang Group (Carotino)</td>
<td>QD Herbs Pokka Corporation, JC Chang Group (Carotino)</td>
<td>Pokka Corporation</td>
<td>Qzen Plantation s</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Retailers</strong></td>
<td>Soukai, Dairy Farm Group (Giant)</td>
<td>Probiotics: Dairy Farm Group</td>
<td>EcoGreen Organic</td>
<td>JustLife, Blue Oasis</td>
<td>Hai-O</td>
<td>Dairy Farm Group (Giant, Cold)</td>
<td>Dairy Farm Group, NHF (Natural Health Farm)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRODUCTS</td>
<td>PUFA Ingredients</td>
<td>Probiotics and Prebiotics</td>
<td>Carotenoids</td>
<td>Aloe Vera Extract</td>
<td>Polyphenols and Flavinoids</td>
<td>Indigenous Plant Extracts</td>
<td>Other anti-allergenic foods</td>
<td>Gluten Free</td>
<td>Lactose Free</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cold Storage, Hero, Aeon Big, The Store, Jaya Grocer, NSK Trade City, Presto, JustLife</td>
<td>(Giant, Cold Storage, Hero), Aeon Big, The Store, Jaya Grocer, NSK Trade City, BMS Organics, Woods Macrobiotics</td>
<td>Prebiotic Dairy Farm Group (Giant, Cold Storage, Hero), GNC Live Well, Aeon Big, The Store, Jaya Grocer, NSK Trade City</td>
<td>(Why not?), GNC Live Well, Lo Hong Ka</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Cold Storage), Aeon Big, The Store, Jaya Grocer, Hero, Presto, BMS Organics</td>
<td>Dairy Farm Group (Giant, Cold Storage, Hero), Aeon Big, The Store, Jaya Grocer, Presto, BMS Organics, Little Green Planet, Country Farm Organics JustLife</td>
<td></td>
<td>Storage, Hero, Aeon Big, The Store, Jaya Grocer, Presto, BMS Organics, Little Green Planet, Country Farm Organics JustLife</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Food Service</td>
<td></td>
<td>EcoGreen Organic</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>BMS Organics (Be LOHAS), The Origin Café &amp; Restaurant</td>
<td>BMS Organics (Be LOHAS)</td>
<td>BMS Organics (Be LOHAS)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
South Korea

The following analyses comprise:

- PESTLE for Functional Food in South Korea
- Functional Food Actors in South Korea

### PESTLE for functional food in South Korea

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product</th>
<th>PESTLE Analysis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **PUFA Ingredients** | **Political**
Korea has been ranked 5th in the world for ‘ease of doing business’ according to the World Bank Group, encompassing factors such as ‘trading across borders’ (where Korea ranks third); It continues to open up its market to foreign exporters with numerous bilateral, strategic economic partnerships and Free Trade Agreements.  
  
Increasing wealth and a busier lifestyle has led to many Koreans seeking health supplements and nutritional components to their daily meals, to stay on top of their recommended intakes.  
  
Korean consumers are highly health conscious, and Omega-3 is a common ingredient that forms part of the staple health supplements that many consume. This is evident in the sheer number of nutrition companies producing/retailing omega-3 products in Korea, and it is easy to find consumer reviews on the most popular products.  
  
Korea has a number of globally recognised manufacturers /developers operating in the region, and partnerships between major global players and domestic companies.  
  
  
None Applicable |
| **Probiotics**   | As above  
Probiotics are highly commonplace in Korea, with several giants such as Yakult Korea producing several product lines. Korean consumers are highly health conscious and are prepared to spend their disposable income providing premium care for themselves and their children. As such, there are even product lines specifically catering |
  
Cellbiotech is a leading global probiotics company based in Korea. There is a special focus towards developing probiotic strains particularly tailored to cater to the functional requirements of Asian/Korean consumers.  
  
None Applicable |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product</th>
<th>PESTLE Analysis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Political</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>to children of various age groups. The busy lifestyles, long work hours, and subsequent rise in lifestyle diseases have resulted in significant awareness and concern around preventing such health issues. Koreans are no strangers to using food for medicinal purposes with roots in Asian/Oriental medicine practices, and thus functional foods/ingredients are widely commonplace. Particularly in the area of probiotics, Korean diets commonly consist of fermented side dishes rich in lactic acid bacteria, such as Kimchi. These have opened further avenues for development, with companies developing probiotics for use in food preparation for common household dishes in Korea.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Product</td>
<td>Political</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prebiotics</td>
<td>As above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carotenoids</td>
<td>As above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aloe Vera Extract</td>
<td>As above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polyphenol &amp; Flavonoids</td>
<td>As above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Product</td>
<td>PESTLE Analysis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **Indigenous Plant Extracts**  | **Political** None Applicable  
There are no existing dynamics for Australian indigenous plant extracts, but should they be introduced, they are likely to compete with domestic/traditional plant extracts such as ginseng/sansam roots etc.  
**Economic** Increasing wealth and a busier lifestyle has led to many Koreans seeking healthy options for their daily meals  
**Socio-cultural** Gluten-free consumers constitute a very small minority in Korea. Recent attention is driven more by consumers seeking a healthier, low-carb diet than a medical condition. Celiac disease is likely rare in Korea.  
**Technological** There have been no major focuses in this area in Korea.  
**Legal** Ingredients, safety and standards are reviewed by the Korean Food and Drug Administration (KFDA). They must adhere to the Food Hygiene Act, Health/Functional Foods Act, Enforcement Rule of Health/Functional Foods Act, Health/Functional Food Code, Regulation on Approval of Functional Ingredients for Health/Functional Foods, Labelling Standard  
**Environmental** Sustainable cultivation remains to be the key concern for producing regions. Indigenous plant harvests must be sustainable and yet the yield must be high enough to satisfy demand volumes. |
| **Gluten-Free Food**            | **Political** See PUFA  
Increasing wealth and a busier lifestyle has led to many Koreans seeking healthy options for their daily meals  
**Economic** Gluten-free consumers constitute a very small minority in Korea. Recent attention is driven more by consumers seeking a healthier, low-carb diet than a medical condition. Celiac disease is likely rare in Korea.  
**Socio-cultural** There have been no major focuses in this area in Korea.  
**Technological** None Applicable  
**Legal** Ingredients, safety and standards are reviewed by the Korean Food and Drug Administration (KFDA). They must adhere to the Food Hygiene Act, Health/Functional Foods Act, Enforcement Rule of Health/Functional Foods Act, Health/Functional Food Code, Regulation on Approval of Functional Ingredients for Health/Functional Foods, Labelling Standard  
**Environmental** None Applicable |
| **Lactose-Free Food**           | **Political** As above  
Lactose-free consumers constitute a very small minority in Korea. Lactose malabsorption is common in South Korea (even 90% according to a website)  
**Economic** Whilst major companies such as Maeil Dairies release products such as lactose-free milk, these are a small part of their wider product range and are not found to be the major technological focuses of most industries in Korea.  
**Socio-cultural** None Applicable  
**Technological** None Applicable  
**Legal** None Applicable  
**Environmental** None Applicable |
| **Anti-allergenic Foods**       | **Political** As above  
There are no significant dynamics specifically catering to anti-allergenic food in Korea. However, given the widespread concerns around  
**Economic** None Applicable  
**Socio-cultural** None Applicable  
**Technological** None Applicable  
**Legal** None Applicable  
**Environmental** None Applicable |

---

80 Cumming & Roberts-Thompson, 2009.  
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product</th>
<th>PESTLE Analysis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Political</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Products</td>
<td>Functional food actors in South Korea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Functional Food Actors in South Korea

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Products</th>
<th>Trade Agents / Importers / Distributors</th>
<th>Ingredient Manufacturers</th>
<th>Food Manufacturers</th>
<th>Retailers</th>
<th>Food Service</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
### Functional food actors in South Korea

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Trade agents / Importers / Distributors</th>
<th>Ingredient Manufacturers</th>
<th>Food Manufacturers</th>
<th>Retailers</th>
<th>Food Service</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
### Functional Food Actors in South Korea

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Products</th>
<th>Trade Agents / Importers / Distributors</th>
<th>Ingredient Manufacturers</th>
<th>Food Manufacturers</th>
<th>Retailers</th>
<th>Food Service</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Probiotics</strong></td>
<td>Vixxol, OnFood, SeungMyung Wholesale, Aimiso, Health House, TaeHwa Chemical, Natural365, OriginKorea, BKBio, ONFarm, Evercell, SongEun Wholesale, Macil Dairies, HanJung, CityBio, DongIl PharmTech, Malaleuca International Korea, Korea Herbal Life,</td>
<td>Danisco, Chr. Hansen, BioGaia, Cellbiotech (and its subsidiary brand, Duolac), Morinaga, Lallemand-Institut Rosell, BioRhythm, The Nutra, Naturalize Health, Pro Pac Labs, Melaleuca, SunRider Manufacturing, CTC International, Nature Pharm Product, Kenbi, Herb &amp; Vita Nutraceutical, Nutrition Sources, Vitalabs, Nature’s Choice, Nature’s Life Nutrition, DHY Nutrition Canada, BioNutrin, Sacco, THT</td>
<td>Duolac (Cellbiotech), Namyang Dairy Products, Macil Dairies, Seoul Dairy Cooperative, Yakult Korea, MDS Korea, BioRhythm, The Nutra.</td>
<td>It is worth noting that probiotics are specific to the dietary behaviours and genetic makeup of the consumers, and thus optimized products are often sensitive and customized to its target population’s biology and dietary culture. In Korea, there is also a high consumption of probiotic foods in staple dishes (often fermented) such as Kimchi, resulting in companies such as Biorporthm, who specialize in probiotic ingredients for Kimchi.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Prebiotics</strong></td>
<td>Bexpharm, Yuhan, Finlandia,</td>
<td>Sigma-Tau Pharmaceuticals, Bexpharm Korea, Dupont-Danisco, Klaire Labs, YuYu Healthcare, Dr. Synbio, Novarex, Duolac, Prebiotics are well-known as ‘food for probiotics’ and the two are often compounded as ‘synbiotics’ in Korea. Therefore, many of the above probiotic manufacturers also produce prebiotic or synbiotic products.</td>
<td>Sigma-Tau Pharmaceuticals, Bexpharm Korea, Dupont-Danisco, Klaire Labs, YuYu Healthcare, Dr. Synbio, Novarex</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Carotenoids</strong></td>
<td>Vixxol, Amway Korea, Synergy Worldwide Korea, UniCity Korea, CollageKorea, OhRyun Trade, DreamLeader, Lotte Confectionery (Health Business),</td>
<td>DSM, Chr. Hansen, Nature’s Bounty, Reonin, Deseret Laboratories International, Natures Family Australia, General Nutrition</td>
<td>DSM, Chr. Hansen, Nature’s Bounty, Reonin, Deseret Laboratories International, Natures Family Australia, General Nutrition</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Products</td>
<td>Functional food actors in South Korea</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Trade agents / Importers / Distributors</td>
<td>Ingredient Manufacturers</td>
<td>Food Manufacturers</td>
<td>Retailers</td>
<td>Food Service</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>STB Global, Orga Whole Food</td>
<td>Corp, Xi’an SanJiang Bio-Engineering, RBK Nutraceuticals, Nutritional Laboratories International, Nutramed, Synergy Worldwide, Access Business Group</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Like other functional ingredient manufacturers, there is a high overlap between the ingredient.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Products</th>
<th>Functional food actors in South Korea</th>
<th>Retailers</th>
<th>Food Service</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ingredients</td>
<td>Trade agents / Importers / Distributors</td>
<td>Ingredient Manufacturers</td>
<td>Food Manufacturers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>manufacturers and the food manufacturers, where Aloe Vera extractors also commonly produce end-user form products.</td>
<td>USANA Health Sciences, Naturex, Ajinomoto OmniChem Natural Specialities,</td>
<td>Complex and ubiquitous retail routes, given the sheer variety of end-products</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polyphenols and</td>
<td>Ju Yeong NS, Sung Jin Global, Sam Jung Flavor Trade / Import / Distributor networks are complex, with polyphenol and</td>
<td>Frutarom. Also used as ingredients for healthy snack product lines by</td>
<td>including polyphenols. Specialised supplements are frequently sold through</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flavonoids</td>
<td>flavonoids extracted from a variety of fruits and vegetables for numerous end products. Extract traders/importers/distri-</td>
<td>major food companies such as CJ Corp and Lotte Confectionery.</td>
<td>the numerous pharmacies in Korea, such as Woori Pharmacy, Green Pharmacy,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>butors are oftentimes the same company that extracts them or manufactures them into their final product – highly integrated value</td>
<td></td>
<td>Health Pharmacy, etc., as OTC (over the counter) health supplements.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>chains exist.</td>
<td></td>
<td>Also sold as part of an end-product when used as ingredients for healthy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Currenty no major sales but potential to use the plant extract suppliers (polyphenols and Aloe Vera to distribute indigenous extracts- demand however will be mainly in the end product space initially)</td>
<td></td>
<td>snack foods by companies such as Lotte Confectionery or CJ Corp, in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gluten-Free</td>
<td>No specific importer/trader/distributor for gluten-free food.</td>
<td>OURHOME, Nongshim, Pulmuone, Samyook, Yummy Earth</td>
<td>convenience stores such as Family Mart or supermarkets such as Lotte,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foods</td>
<td>Few, if any companies in Korea are specific to the manufacture of gluten-free food products, which is a nascent trend in</td>
<td>Few, if any companies in Korea are specific to the manufacture of</td>
<td>Hyundai, Shinsegae Marts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Korea.</td>
<td>gluten-free food products, which is a nascent trend in Korea.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indigenous</td>
<td>Currenty no major sales but potential to use the plant extract suppliers (polyphenols and Aloe Vera to distribute indigenous extracts- demand however will be mainly in the end product space initially)</td>
<td>iHerb, Lotte Mart, Hyundai Mart, Emart, Shinsegae Mart, HomePlus, Orga</td>
<td>With the exception of iHerb, there do not seem to be any specialise d food</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plant Extracts</td>
<td>Currenty no major sales but potential to use the plant extract suppliers (polyphenols and Aloe Vera to distribute indigenous extracts- demand however will be mainly in the end product space initially)</td>
<td>Whole Foods</td>
<td>services towards gluten-free (GF) consumer s. However, there are GF menu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>items in most food services, in which such consumer s should avoid common</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Products</td>
<td>Functional food actors in South Korea</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Trade agents / Importers / Distributors</td>
<td>Ingredient Manufacturers</td>
<td>Food Manufacturers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lactose Free Foods</td>
<td></td>
<td>Mael Dairies, Petit Ami, Few, if any companies in Korea are specific and limited to the manufacture of lactose-free food products. Mael Dairies produce a “Easy to digest milk” which is lactose free; Petit Ami are manufacturers of gluten-free baked goods.</td>
<td>Mael Dairies, Petit Ami, Few, if any companies in Korea are specific and limited to the manufacture of lactose-free food products. Mael Dairies produce a “Easy to digest milk” which is lactose free; Petit Ami are manufacturers of gluten-free baked goods.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anti-allergen foods</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Luxury Foods

This section of the Reference Report collates the work specific to luxury foods undertaken through the research project, including the PESTLE analysis and tables of main actors in specific markets. The context for this work is described in the Reference Report sections describing the value chain analysis, company assessment, assessment, market analysis (see also separate reports and Functional and Luxury Project Literature Review), technology assessment and pathway development group work.

NOTES:

1. Some sections of the initial phases of the project combine analyses for both functional and luxury foods. Check the lists of tables and figures for this Reference Report to locate this information.
2. Some sections of information already included elsewhere in this report are reproduced here where they provide context or essential detail required for interpretation of the information provided.

Introduction

Luxury food production among the local food and beverage companies is quite limited. For example, the recognised luxury potential of South Australia seafood is limited because of the scarcity of the local seafood resources and the small size of the domestic seafood processing sector (DAFF, 2012). The main luxury and premium products in this category are Southern rock lobster and abalone.

The luxury food and beverage industries in South Australia have some important assets, such as the green and clean image, strong brands and strong brand loyalty, for example among wines, and products with increasing demand and huge potential for export to Europe and Asia (such as truffles, cheese, chocolate), and optimal climate conditions for certain products (e.g. seafood).

Table B1 below lists luxury foods, however this list is not necessarily exhaustive; premium products can be found in almost all food categories in South Australia, and in some cases these could ultimately evolve into luxury products. Future work to be done could include helping premium products to evolve to future luxury products in many different food and beverage groups beyond currently globally recognised, traditional luxury foods such as truffles or caviar.

As noted elsewhere in this report, it is important to note that the definition of luxury food is quite subjective. In South Australia, it is appropriate to use a broad interpretation of the high-end food market, including categories such as premium, super-premium and luxury. It is also important not to have too strict definitions and borders for such food groups since, ultimately, the goal of the industry and the Government is to see all those categories grow, and in some cases products that are not currently defined as luxury may have the ability to be so in the future.

In view of the dynamic growth in the luxury market and the availability of luxury goods to a wider range of consumers than ever before, it is important to further study the changing consumption models and changes in the way consumers define luxury. In a global context, it is critically important for luxury researchers and marketers to understand why consumers buy luxury, what they believe luxury is, and how their perception of luxury value impacts their buying behaviour (see Wiedmann et al., 2007).
Table B1: Luxury Foods in South Australia.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Products</th>
<th>Value Chain Participants</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Trade agents / Importers/Wholesalers/Distributors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Others</td>
<td>Luxury Chocolates</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Distilled Spirits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seafood</td>
<td>Southern Bluefin Tuna</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abalone</td>
<td>Western Abalone Processors, Southsea Abalone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Products</td>
<td>Value Chain Participants</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Trade agents / Importers/Wholesalers/Distributors</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seafood</td>
<td>Seafood, Williams Seafoods, Ngāi Tahu Seafood Australia Pty Ltd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sturgeon Caviar</td>
<td>Gourmet Life™, Angelakis Bros, Ferguson Australia Pty Ltd, International Oysters &amp; Seafood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oysters</td>
<td>Ferguson Australia Pty Ltd, Pristine Oyster Farm, Pure Coffin Bay Oysters, ANGEL OYSTERS, BST Oyster Supplies, Streaky Bay Marine Products Pty Ltd, Natural Oysters, International Oysters &amp; Seafood BST Oyster Supplies, Seafood Exporters, Seamaster, Fishing Supplies, Port Lincoln Prison Industries SA, Cameron of Tasmania, Shellfish Culture Limited, Geordy River Aquaculture. SEAPA, Wychitella Holdings Pty Ltd</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Opportunities in luxury food

The main luxury food opportunities, identified in the Functional and Luxury Project Literature Review and in the company interviews for this study include chocolate, red wine, truffles, Wagyu beef, and selected seafood such as abalone, Southern rock lobster, oysters and caviar. These are presented in Table B2 below.

Other than caviar, these luxury foods are already produced to some extent in South Australia. Strengthening the existing capabilities in production, marketing and exporting, and improving understanding of customer demands are crucial steps in seizing these opportunities.

Table B2. Luxury Food Opportunities.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Opportunity Area</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Luxury chocolates | Dominated by European brands (Lindt, Godiva, etc.). SA has local capability (Haighs is one of Australia’s leading premium chocolatiers). Traceability is important. **Actor examples:**  
AE Haighs – SA based manufacturer and retailer with 14 stores in SA  
Theobroma – Food of the Gods, franchise network of 17 stores in Australia, with number 18 soon to open  
Hills 100 – owns Koko Black, a retailer specialising in artisan chocolates and hot beverages and desserts with 12 stores[^82] |
| Red wine | Dominated by European brands (especially Bordeaux). South Australia is home to several premium red winemakers, including Treasury Wine Estates. Opportunities in branding. Traceability is important. **Actor examples:**  
Rockford Wines, top-end luxury boutique wines from SA  
Penfolds – subsidiary of Treasury Wine Estates  
Henschke – family owned SA based winery  
SA has several active wine zones: Clare Valley, Barossa Valley, Eden Valley, Langhorne Creek, Adelaide Hills, Padthaway, McLaren Valen, Coonawarra, Riverland. |
| Lobster | SA already has a significant export business in live rock lobster to China. **Actor examples:**  
Production of Southern Rock Lobster relatively fragmented with nine processors of wild lobster in SA[^83]. |
| Truffles | Limited existing cultivation in SA. Complementary to European production through seasonality. **Actor examples:**  
In SA truffle growing has been established; the Australian Truffle Growers Association lists a couple of independent, small scale operators. |
| Abalone | Existing wild caught abalone fishery in SA and several abalone aquaculture farms, both greenlip and blacklip abalone. Value from differentiation, traceability and premium quality. **Actor examples:**  
Largest abalone farms in Australia are GSW (WA), KIAB and SAMAB (SA)[^85]  
SA: Western Abalone Processors |

[^85]: Cook, 2014.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Opportunity Area</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Oyster | Existing oyster farming and export business. **Actor examples:**
| | • South Australian Oyster Growers Association (SAOGA) members including e.g. Pristine Oysters and MORI Seafood. |
| Wagyu Beef | Existing Wagyu beef industry in Australia, and in SA. Possibilities in upscaling production in SA. **Actor examples:**
| | • Several feedlots and commercial breeders including AA Co, JBS, Mort & Co, de Bruin group |

Packaging for luxury foods

As noted elsewhere in this report, packaging is an integral element in luxury foods. In addition to the hedonic elements of packaging for luxury foods, tamper-evident and tamper-resistant packaging innovations can provide a means to combat counterfeit products and protect a luxury food brand image in competitive Asian markets.

The following table describes packaging cues for the luxury market[^86].

Table B3. Aspects of luxury packaging

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Luxury packaging cues</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pack interaction</td>
<td>Delaying instant gratification, through user initiated discovery of the details and functionality behind a layered unveiling process can lead to stronger brand impressions. Pop-up constructions, pull tabs, unexpected uses of materials; plush suedes, smooth tyveks, ribbon closures, box toppers, or tissues.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audible (sounds that the packaging makes)</td>
<td>Each sound provides the opportunity to fine tune the perceived value of the packaging design, and therefore the brand. Creaking hinges, crinkling cellophane, slide of two piece rigid boxes (low pitch if heavy weight board is used), cracking of blister packs (high pitched), etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Olfactive (smell)</td>
<td>The fragrant frontier is currently being employed to provide layered brand identification and recognition across many retail environments. (It needs to be carefully assessed if and how this can be utilised in the context of luxury foods).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haptic (Relating to the sense of touch, in particular relating to the perception and manipulation of objects using the senses of touch and proprioception)</td>
<td>Luxury can be recognised through both touch and the number of hand positions required to interact with packaging. The sharply folded 90° angles on boxes or bags, the smooth bevel of a perfume bottle, all communicate something at every touch point. Sharp folds and ease of use speak to quality and craftsmanship, both virtues of luxury.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tactile (connected with the sense of touch)</td>
<td>Tactile design features are able to create brand-defining cues. A classic tactile cue to luxury is pairing an all-over embossed uncoated paper with a sculpted metallic or high-gloss hot-stamp. The finish and tactile contrast presented by many top prestige retailers follow this classic rule.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Closures</td>
<td>Satin ribbon closures as the point of entry create a luxe in-home product unveiling experience. Custom moulded snap closures can also add visual weight to differentiate keepsake from throw-away packaging. Commodity products are packed with a secure, in-store, and on-shelf at-a-glance experience. Luxury products require the exact opposite, a well-designed layered unveiling process to build suspense up to the final reveal in the user’s personal environment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contrast finishes</td>
<td>Light interacts with materials and finishes differently. Packaging material stock should be smooth and crisp, consistent in color, and evenly distributing light across the sheet without</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

imperfections regardless of texture. Matte sheets can be contrasted with gloss UV, or foil hot stamps to make a crisp impression to reflect lighting in any given environment.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Heritage</th>
<th>From custom papers, and fabrics, to stock materials with custom processes, luxury and prestige is a matter of restraint, not excess. The complete opposite of flaunting logos, prestige brands instead focus on projecting a look and feel rooted in the brand’s heritage visually communicating their story.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Anticipation</td>
<td>Creating mystery, romance, and elevating suspense utilising a well orchestrated unveiling process walks the fine line between luxury, and over-packaging. The idea of opening a box and revealing the final product immediately, leaves much to be desired. As a standard practice we prefer to add a moment of pause once the pack is opened, to create a sense of anticipation followed by a translucent layer to softly reveal the product below prior to delivering that final a-ha moment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quality control</td>
<td>No matter how well your design communicates luxury on screen or in photographs, the tangible mass produced package is what has to deliver the goods. Understanding how climate impacts materials and print processes at every stage of production through final user interaction is critical to understanding luxury packaging. Humidity is the most often overlooked element in packaging design. Are materials from a humid environment being imported to a dry climate or vice versa? This critical understanding of quality control at every stage is what can make or break the sense of luxury as presented by packaging.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Roadmap for luxury foods
This section of the Reference Report outlines VTT’s proposed roadmap to enable South Australia to graduate from specific food sectors into luxury and lifestyle businesses.

There are a number of critical issues that need to be addressed in this process:

- South Australia and the luxury food business
- The fragmented and oligopolistic nature of the subsectors which can compete and innovate to create a cluster in the luxury food industry in South Australia
- Detailed analysis of the subsectors that have managed historically to trade up and comparing them with potential companies in the food industry that can innovate along the value chain
- Short, medium and long term strategic plans to transform these industries into high growth, highly profitable industries

South Australia and the luxury food business
The Functional and Luxury Foods Project Literature Review identified that Australia in general, and South Australia in particular, is regarded as a key player in the food industry in the region.

Historically, Australia has developed itself into a large export-oriented agricultural sector, with strong growth in food, beverage and commodity exports to Asia. Also, Australia’s connections through geographic proximity and trade, and investment and cultural links to the fast growing Asia-Pacific region, offer cost effective service compared to competitors in Europe and North America.

Both these conditions favour South Australia’s position to develop the luxury food sector. Building on the current situation, South Australia can be a stable and reliable long-term supplier of fresh produce offering counter-seasonal availability in the Asia-Pacific region.

In addition, the state’s diverse climatic conditions and abundance of natural resource allows varied production systems, including small specialist farms for niche products. These niche products can be developed further into luxury food categories (see product-focused roadmaps below).

Table B4. A reputation for quality food.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Australia</th>
<th>Malaysia</th>
<th>US</th>
<th>China</th>
<th>France</th>
<th>Brazil</th>
<th>Canada</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Safe</td>
<td>39</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sustainable</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Healthy</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High quality</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expensive</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>39</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Good taste</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: Reputation Institute, 3 September 2013.
Australia has an excellent quality reputation for safe, sustainable and healthy foods, supported by a transparent food chain and highly effective regulation that is required to build and sustain any type of luxury heritage.

It is also worth noting that the Literature Review also identified some luxury subsectors which can be organised and developed as luxury food sector.

As the Functional and Luxury Foods Project Literature Review has shown, Australia, and South Australia in particular, have robust and well-endowed research institutions and companies that are renowned for excellence in agriculture and food research and development. This creates opportunities for partnerships, particularly for investors with commercialisation expertise.

There is a willingness to embrace new technologies and manufacturing processes to increase productivity, and a growing recognition of the need for international partnerships, industry consolidation and reconfiguration of supply chains to achieve globally competitive economies of scale in the functional food industry that can be easily extended to the luxury food sector (see Table B5).

**Table B5. Free Trade Agreements (FTAs) between Australia and other countries**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FTAs in force</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• ASEAN-Australia-New Zealand FTA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Australia-Chile FTA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Australia-New Zealand Closer Economic Relations</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Australia-United States FTA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Malaysia-Australia FTA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Singapore-Australia FTA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Thailand-Australia FTA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FTAs signed (but not yet in force)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Korea-Australia FTA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FTAs concluded (but not yet in force)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Japan-Australia Economic Partnership Agreement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FTAs under negotiation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Australia-China FTA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Australia-Gulf Cooperation Council (GCC) FTA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Australia-India Comprehensive Economic Cooperation Agreement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Indonesia-Australia Comprehensive Economic Partnership Agreement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Pacific Agreement on Closer Economic Relations (PACER) Plus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Regional Comprehensive Economic Partnership (RCEP)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Trade in Services Agreement (TiSA)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Trans-Pacific Partnership Agreement (TPP)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

As noted in the previous section, there is expertise and strength in human health and nutrition research, as well as in robust regulatory protection with consistent standards in quarantine, food safety and food labelling. VTT believes South Australia is well positioned to build, develop and sustain a luxury food subsector, with its renowned premium food and wine, beef, seafood amongst other products. This ecosystem is further enhanced by institutions such as Waite Institute, South Australia has the largest cluster of agricultural researchers in Australia. These institutions, combined with the strong research and development capabilities, provide a solid foundation for the luxury food sector to thrive.

---


88 Has the largest cluster of agricultural researchers in Australia,
Subsectors of luxury food

The luxury food industry as identified from the Functional and Luxury Project Literature Review consists of six subsectors. They are:

- Wine
- Chocolate
- Seafood (abalone, lobster, oyster, tuna, caviar)
- Truffles
- Cheese
- Wagyu beef

These subsectors follow the VTT definition of luxury foods, which states that:

“Luxury foods can be defined as categories of food that are scarce and rare to source, are painstakingly prepared with care, of consistently quality, often endorsed by the high-end clientele and restaurants in different geographies, follows cultural cues, purchasing power parity, tastes, habits and historical evolution of people of a particular country that are linked to wellness, indulgence, ethnicity and high perceived value.”

As luxury foods are also related to cultural cues, purchasing power parity, tastes, habits and historical evolution of people of a particular country, the definition of this sector needs to consider these elements. Features such as wellness, indulgence, ethnicity, value and convenience that demonstrate the cultural sensitivity of different geographies to this list.

Depending on the price and exclusivity in different geographies, indulgence and value will define the nature of the luxury food in particular geographies. For example, several products in this category

---

89 SARDI is the South Australian Government’s principal research institute, where scientists work to position Australia’s agricultural, food, aquatic and bioscience industries as internationally competitive and ecologically sustainable. SARDI addresses these priorities, as well as barriers to growth, through programs assessing challenges such as food security, resource and climate adaptation, biosecurity and enabling technologies.

90 CRC program supports the adoption and commercialisation of research through financial support for end-user-driven research collaborations.

91 Australian Seafood Cooperative Research Center was closed on 30th of June 2015 http://www.seafoodcrc.com/

92 Established in 2007, allocated A$35.5 million over seven years for research

93 Established in 2011, has received A$19.9 million over eight years

94 Rural RDCs are partnerships between the Australian Government and industry. They aim to provide industry with the innovation and productivity tools to compete in global markets.
are produced in a way that supports the local, small to medium-sized farmers, promote eco-friendly farming processes and/or support world causes such as the use of locally grown crops (including those grown on community supported agricultural farms), heritage and heirloom crops and sustainable foods.

An example of this is the Slow Food movement\(^{95}\), which gained momentum with the signing of a manifesto in Paris in 1989. The aim of this movement is to protect the pleasure of the table from the homogenization of modern fast food and life. Through a variety of initiatives, Slow Food promotes gastronomic culture, develops taste education, conserves agricultural biodiversity and protects traditional foods at risk of extinction.

Another example is gourmet or specialty foods (generally considered to be high quality foods) that are perfectly prepared and artfully presented. They usually include exotic, rare or unique ingredients. Specialty products range from smoked salmon, caviar, herb-infused olive oils and imported cheeses to dessert sauces, unique desserts and candies. The top selling specialty foods include beverages, dairy products (excluding cheese), cheese, condiments, and nuts / seeds / trail mix\(^{98}\).

Other examples include artisan foods of high quality, and handcrafted food products, usually made in small batches. The artisans’ focus is on their craft and commitment to quality. They are dedicated to their work and to the care of their animals and the land. Examples include cheeses, breads, jams, sauces, natural and organic meat, heirloom vegetables and handmade chocolate.

Specialty meats, such as kangaroo, elk, buffalo, crocodile, Wagyu beef, and organic free range beef are also examples of these foods. Specialty meats are growing in popularity around the US\(^{96}\).

Another example could be what has come to be termed ‘extreme cuisine’. Believed to be pioneered by Ferran Adria, a Spanish chef, whose restaurant El Bulli became a destination for foodies all over the world\(^{97}\), extreme cuisine is a multi-sensory dining experience where taste, texture and technique are pushed to their limits.

The above discussion of the definition leads VTT to believe that, though food in general is highly responsive to local culture, due to the phenomena of rarity and exclusivity of special food items such as particular wines or Wagyu beef, they would still be considered as luxury foods. Some geographic areas won’t have access to these foods due to the taste or price, while other markets would love them for the same reason. As different geographic areas will evolve over time, the luxury foods will disseminate – as we have witnessed in the wine industry in recent years.

For example, China consumes more wine than most countries in the world\(^{98}\). To cater to this consumption, Moet and Hennessey launched a sparkling white wine called Chandon that is not produced in the champagne region of France, but produced in India and China for these markets.

In Australia, Victoria has more wineries and regions, New South Wales more zones, and Western Australia has the largest single zone, but South Australia is known as the wine State. South Australia has 44% of the nation’s vineyards, is responsible for 47% of the annual crush and makes

---

\(^{95}\) [NOTE: The Slow Food movement was first established in Italy in 1986.]


48% of the annual wine output (it is a net buyer of grapes and bulk wine from the other states). Thus wine as a subsector can rightly be developed to be a luxury good from South Australia.

Opportunities also exist for chocolate. Australia is the seventh biggest chocolate consuming nation (consumption 10.8 lbs per capita after Switzerland, Germany, Ireland and the United Kingdom, Norway, and Sweden\(^9^9\)). Larger manufacturers are keen to get a market share of this burgeoning sector but, without the personal story required to sell such products, it can be a long haul.

A way forward in this subsector may be to acquire artisan brands and market them as separate entities. This is a niche strategy which has to be properly developed. Large producers with high economies of scale make life hard for surviving smaller, boutique, artisan brands. Australian cities have experienced a boom in the number of high-end chocolatiers and specialised chocolate shops, such as Laurent Meric’s Cacao Fine Chocolate and David Medlow Chocolates. Thus this subsector may be of interest to investors.

In recent years, world seafood consumption has risen and overall production has also increased\(^1^0^0\). However, wild-caught production has remained stable, suggesting that wild-catch fisheries have reached their maximal potential. Aquaculture has therefore become increasingly important in meeting local and global demand for seafood.

In addition to high quality wild-caught and farmed production, Australia offers the latest technology and processes, sophisticated management and modern catching regimes, world class harvest and postharvest technologies and innovations. Australian aquaculture and fisheries products and expertise are in international demand. In 2012–13, South Australia was the largest exporter of edible fisheries products in value terms at $266 million. It was followed by Victoria ($138 million), Tasmania ($132 million) and Queensland ($131 million)\(^1^0^1\). Australia exports over 60% of its abalone, mainly to Hong Kong, China and Japan. In volume terms, Tasmania accounted for 55% of Australia’s total abalone production and is one of the largest abalone fisheries in the world. Besides Tasmania, abalone is primarily harvested in Victoria and South Australia.

For other seafood subsectors, key species groups such as southern Bluefin tuna (aquaculture), southern rock lobster (wild catch), prawns (wild catch), abalone (wild catch), and oysters (aquaculture) can be developed as luxury foods. The gross value of fisheries production in South Australia rose by 1% ($3 million), from $437 million in 2011–12 to $441 million in 2012–13. The aquaculture sector accounted for the largest proportion of this value, making up $243 million (55%) of the state’s total production value. Wild-catch production was valued slightly lower, at $198 million, accounting for the remaining 45% of the state’s total fisheries value.

Truffles are a relatively new crop in Australia\(^1^0^2\). Plantings, known as truffières (truffle orchards) began in the 1990s in Tasmania and Western Australia, with the first truffles being harvested in 1999.

Truffières are now established and producing in Victoria, New South Wales, the ACT (Australian Capital Territory), South Australia and Southern Queensland. Australia is now the world’s fourth largest truffle producing country. To commemorate this achievement, Melbourne and Victoria’s regions hosted and celebrated a major new truffle festival – Truffle Melbourne – in 2014.

\(^1^0^0\) http://www.fao.org/fishery/statistics/global-consumption/en, accessed 15.10.2105.
\(^1^0^2\) http://trufflegrowers.com.au/growing-truffles/, accessed 15.10.2105
The major export market opportunities for Australia include Europe, Asia and North America due to the counter-seasonal supply advantage. Aside from the traditional European markets, it is estimated\(^{103}\) that the market demand in Japan and South-East Asia is approximately 10-15 tonnes per annum and the United States less than ten tonnes per annum. Based upon these estimates, the Asian markets may have the potential to provide Australian growers with a large and valuable market for many years.

Estimates of market demand for Australian truffles are difficult to source. However, prices for Australian exported truffles from the Hazel Hill truffière have been reported as achieving wholesale prices of USD\$1,500-3,000 per kg (approximately A\$1,600-3,300 per kg) (Malajczuk and Amaranthus 2007). Australia’s reputation as a truffle exporter is at an important stage of development, as many markets are not familiar with Australian-grown truffles.

Australia is the fourth largest exporter of dairy in the world, accounting for 7% of world trade, and this subsector directly employs 43,000 people\(^{104}\). Greater China accounts for over 16% of Australia’s total dairy exports and is Australia’s largest market by both volume and value.

In 2013/14, South Australia produced around 515 million litres of milk, accounting for approximately 6% of national milk output. South Australian milk has a record of high component values in terms of butterfat and protein - crucial to economical manufacture and processing into dairy products. The state’s industry has a long history of high productivity and quality dairy produce.

South Australia’s milk has a record of high component values in terms of butterfat and protein - crucial to economical manufacture and processing into dairy products. The state’s producers also lead the industry when it comes to milk quality, which adds to its value in terms of product shelf life and versatility to a processor.

Wagyu is a generic term that means ‘Japanese or Japanese style cattle’. It refers to the entirety of the nation’s breeds, especially from a group of Japanese breeds\(^{105}\) revered for an incredibly high level of fat marbling. Kobe beef, on the other hand, comes from the Tajima-gyu breed – and by law, only from that breed. However, not all Wagyu cattle are Japanese – in fact, only a small proportion are. Over the past 10 years, farmers in Australia, the US and the UK have been picking up on the trend for super-luxury meat and setting up herds of their own. Thus South Australia can develop this brand, which could be similar to Kobe beef in terms of taste and price.

Each of these markets can be considered to be oligopolies for South Australia in the luxury food domain. The following section of this Reference Report collates the detailed analysis and proposed roadmaps for each of the identified subsectors, and also includes the PESTLE analysis and summary of actors in specific markets for luxury foods: China, Hong Kong, Singapore, Japan, Malaysia and South Korea.


\(^{105}\) Japanese cattle consist of four breeds: Japanese Black, Japanese Brown, Japanese Poll, and Japanese Shorthorn. Ox-like in structure, these breeds are bred for field work. Tajima-Gyu: The cow that Kobe beef comes from which is classified as a Japanese Black breed. Kokusan-Gyu: Refers to cattle which are raised domestically in Japan. Regardless of the country or breed, cattle are classified as “Kokusan-Gyu” if they have spent more than half of their life in Japan.
These analyses include examples of potential companies in the food industry that can innovate on the value chain in terms of branding and packaging.

Wine
As noted in the above discussion, despite other states having more wineries and regions, zones or larger single zones, South Australia is still ‘the wine state’, with 44% of the nation’s vineyards, 47% of the annual crush and 48% of the annual wine output.\(^{106}\)

This was not always the case. In 1889, at the height of Victoria’s production (before the onset of phylloxera), South Australia produced 2.29 million litres compared with Victoria’s 7.1 million litres. Federation (which removed state duties) and the progressive opening of the Riverland areas along the Murray River led to an all-time high share of 80% by South Australia in 1946. By the 1980s South Australia’s contribution to the national make varied between 58% and 65%, depending on the vagaries of vintage.

The top five wine companies of Australia by total revenue, ranked in decreasing order (consecutively from 2010-14) are: Treasury Wine Estates, Pernod Ricard Winemakers, Accolade Wines, Casella Wines and Australian Vintage. These five companies are also the largest producers by sales of branded wines.\(^{107}\)

However, some of the finest wines for different regions, according to Langton’s Vintage Ratings, are Henschke Hill of Grace of Eden Valley and Penfolds Grange of South Australia, Hunter Valley Semilion and Shiraz of New South Wales, Eden Valley Riesling and Barossa Valley Shiraz of South Australia, Chardonnay and Shiraz from Northern Tasmania and the Margaret River, and Pemberton Pinot Noir of West Australia.

South Australia has distinct wine regions, often grouped together. Adelaide is referred as the wine capital of Australia, with over 200 cellar doors. Wine producing regions with international repute include Adelaide and Adelaide Plains, The Adelaide Hills, Barossa Valley (including Eden Valley), Clare Valley, Fleurieu Peninsula (including McLaren Vale, Langhorne Creek, Currency Creek and Southern Fleurieu), Kangaroo Island, Limestone Coast (including Coonawarra, Padthaway, Mount Benson and Wrattonbully), The Riverland, and Southern Flinders Ranges.\(^{108}\)

Opportunity landscape to trade-up

**Strengths:**

- High disposable incomes of Australian consumers affect growth towards middle to high range wines.
- Industry is supported by an open and willing government, such as by the trade agreements specific to Japan, South Korea and China, that will boost future growth.
- Strong brand loyalty exists among consumers of Australian wines.
- Australian wine regions have the benefit of being considered as one of the finest, vibrant and heritage regions as of today.


Weaknesses:

- Current Australian wine industry is plagued by oversupply, uneconomic fruit supply; difficulty is achieving economies of scale resulting in declining profitability.

- Fragmentation of the industry prevents it from responding quickly especially when distributors are highly concentrated further reducing threat to winemakers.

Opportunities:

- Tax improvement policies like abolition of WET (Wine Equalization Tax), might reduce uneconomic supply of fruits and improve profitability.

- New country of origin labelling laws will positively affect brand value of Australian wines while discouraging competition.

- Mergers and acquisitions in the industry will help in achieving consolidation of the wine industry thus improving scalability, adaptability and resilience.

Threats:

- A volatile Australian dollar affects export/import markets.

- Effects of recent tax regimes such as WET rebate abolition will change the industry dynamics.

- Increasing health concerns of consumers will affect alcohol consumption in the future.

- Rising competition from new low-cost wine producers, especially in South East Asia, poses high competitiveness in the future.

Industry Analysis

Buyer Power

The Australian wine market is concentrated on only a few retailers, which gives them power over growers and winemakers. In the current scenario, oversupply of grapes and winemaking capacity exacerbates this effect. Switching cost of consumers is low, which means consumers can easily pick another product, especially in a widely differentiated market (main buyers include specialist retailers, department stores, etc.). Thus, buyer power is high to moderate.

Supplier Power

Winemakers and producers are struggling with high capacity and oversupply, following dampening of their expectation of strong export growth. Because they are fragmented and comprise numerous small independent players, the supplier power is reduced further. Wine producers cannot substitute raw materials (primarily grapes), which weakens their position. Thus, supplier power is low-moderate.

Substitutes

Health concerns among consumers will affect alcohol consumption. Wine can be substituted by other alcoholic drinks as well (beer, spirits etc.). Other factors include the rising cost of maintaining shelf life (storage), low cost of switching, changing consumer preference, dependence on grape quality variation (crop availability). Innovative products like fortified water, natural fruit juices and
others can catch consumer preferences, which are very fickle. As a result of these factors, the threat from substitutes is considered to be moderate.

New entrants to the market
Barriers to entry, such as high capital investment, legislation concerns, changes in taxation norms, low profitability niche segmentation, and high levels of differentiation in existing products ensures that the threat of new entrants remains weak. Flat to low domestic growth and rising competition in the export market from new countries further weakens this threat.

Degree of rivalry
Price and volume pressure on the wine producers, increasing competition from emerging wine producers such as New Zealand, rising wine imports due to consumer hunger for international brands, evolving palates and preferences, mediocre sales projections (2014-18), consolidated distribution players (retailers that are supermarkets), strict government regulations, and slow demand in mature markets have extensively increased rivalry among existing players. Thus the degree of rivalry is high.

However, though rivalry is high in the wine industry, the low threat from new entrants, and moderate supplier, buyer power and substitutes ensures the wine industry remains an attractive industry through the period 2014-18.
Figure B1. Roadmap for wine as a luxury food
Luxury brand marketing for wine

Provenance
Region/Terroir/Ancient wine making history becomes part of the experience: for example Henschke tracing back to its first generation in wine-making in single vineyard wines, naming of wines by d'Arenberg for the kind of fungal disease that affects the grapes only in Mourvedre region.

Pricing
Overpricing can be used as a strategy to raise value in the luxury market, dependent on factors such as variety, growth season, taste, and maturation techniques. Above the $50 bottle price point, price becomes independent from production costs.

Publicity
An association with art, dining, celebrity chefs, tours and wine tastings to complement the experience of the wine can become part of publicity efforts. For example, building on the momentum of its launch the previous year, Campo Viejo’s ‘Streets of Colour’ campaign went truly global in 2014, expanding into new regions including Miami (wall painting), Oslo (school art contest), Dublin (local urban artists and tapas) and Toronto.

Position
Some relevant positioning techniques include retailing of wine in certain formats of stores such as delicatessens and speciality stores, or wines available in only certain restaurants, or that has to be ordered or purchased specifically from the vineyard and direct selling.

Persona
Building personality traits that reflect the wine brand/ taste/ terroir/region through association to history/historical events/historic people and/or to contemporary art forms/ music/artists and/or reflecting the winemakers/farmer’s own personality on to the wine. For example, true to its penchant for art, in 2013, Perrier-Jouët unveiled the ‘InBloom Fresh Box’ case, the result of its collaboration with Benjamin Graindorge, an up and coming French designer.

In Shanghai, Royal Salute’s ‘Alchemy’ exhibition of sculpture, film, food and music celebrated the brand’s special artistry through a series of immersive spaces, each representing one of the brand’s signature blends.

Personage, or brand DNA
Brands look for their personage from their owners/ founders/ creators/ winemakers that define the ancestry of the brand.

Characterised by its historical attachment to Art Nouveau, the House Perrier Jouet has remained faithful to its fundamentals, showcasing on the bottles of its Belle Époque cuvée the famous anemones created by Emile Gallé in 1902 – a motif inspired by Japanese floral prints and designs. They represent a key element of the new Perrier-Jouët Grand Brut design, launched in autumn 2013. This reaffirms the champagne house’s style, which has long been associated with artistic creation and artisanal craft.

Paucity
Penfolds Grange is an example of the use of paucity. Grange is made each year in very limited quantities (in some years less than 3,000 dozen) from a certain style of ripe, intensely-flavoured fruit grown on Penfolds' own vineyards and bought from independent growers. Because Penfolds picks and chooses, with absolute ruthlessness, from a range of vineyards in various districts for this wine,
the impact of vintage variation is minimised. This has led to a general acceptance that Grange is the most consistent of the world’s great wines.

**Performance**
The delivery of a wine product’s quality, and assurance of its taste and texture, stems from the delicate and diligent process of winemaking, whether that is traditional or modern, classic vintage or experimental and unique. Some brands adopt unique, innovative techniques while some build on the ancient art of viticulture to create the value in the product. They build credentials through association with, for example, the finest wine tasters, experts in winemaking, or their owner’s experience in foreign (European) states.

**Packaging**
The objective of packaging is to strengthen the product’s heritage, and build provenance while maintaining the brand’s distinctive DNA. Thus, most brands partner with designers/ artists/ sculptors with whom the brand associates well. But classic brands also ensure consistency in their communication style that is witnessed even when they adopt innovative or new designs. The logo, signage and other branding therefore tend to remain part of the unchangeable heritage. The idea is that the bottle becomes a ‘souvenir surrogate for the region/terroir/brand/nation’. Some brands also bring out limited edition bottles which draw inspiration from a celebrity (a well-known or recognisable brand ambassador, for example the artist or painters etc.)
Chocolate

Opportunities in the chocolate sector may arise by purchasing artisan brands and marketing them as separate entities. However, large producers need economies of scale, making the situation more difficult for surviving artisan brands.

Australian cities have experienced a boom in the number of high-end chocolatiers and specialised chocolate shops, such as Laurent Meric’s Cacao Fine Chocolate and David Medlow Chocolates. These new stores are providing competition to more established outlets, such as Hillier’s, Haigh’s and Newman’s.

Australia produces between 50 and 100 metric tonnes of cocoa per year. Daintree Estates (2010) is the first Australian bean-to-bar company. Other bean-to-bar companies are: Bahen & Co. (70% Madagascar), Zokoko (award-winning Ato Beni), Haigh’s chocolate (70% dark single origin Peru), Bracegirdle House of Fine Chocolate, Minlaton Chocolate, Havenhand Chocolate and others.

Opportunity landscape to trade-up

Strengths

- Consumers have high disposable incomes, allowing them to spend relatively freely on non-essential food items.
- Growth of chocolate demand (fuelled by emerging Asia primarily China, Japan and India) is very high especially in gifting which promises growth in higher margin sector.
- Chocolate is relatively recession-proof.
- Competition is strong in the food sector, and despite ongoing consolidation, no single player is able to force another leading player out of the market, which ensures competition remains high.

Weaknesses

- The cost of doing business in Australia is higher than in emerging Asian markets, where infrastructure now supports manufacturing industries, resulting in a loss of investment in Australia.
- Exploitation on cocoa farms, and lack of skill training in chocolates (e.g. lack of skilled people and high factor costs) can damage brands.
- It is difficult for small players to look for economies of scale as they are struggling to develop their supply chain.
- Heavily backed Eat Australia campaigns could cause problems for companies that export to Australia.

Opportunities

- The government is keen to encourage foreign investment and offers a transparent business environment.
- New country-of-origin labelling legislation creates a unique opportunity for firms with manufacturing presence in Australia. It inhibits external competition and provides means of capitalising on nationalistic sentiment.
• Consumers are increasingly discerning, spurred on by higher disposable incomes. The premium food sector therefore provides strong opportunities for manufacturers.

• Successful cocoa growing trials have been performed in tropical Australia (RIRCD, 2010) and thus Australia may be able to develop its own cocoa production (a recent cocoa shortage is threatening small players).

**Threats**

• Companies are increasingly turning to New Zealand for cheaper imports, leading to disquiet among Australian farmers.

• Protectionism means agricultural industries are not as efficient as they could be, which may lead to problems as other regional agricultural producers improve their own standards within a much lower-cost framework.

• Climatic extremities leave Australian farmers vulnerable, and necessitate heavy investment in storage and harvesting facilities.

• The current review of food labelling policy by the food standards agencies of Australia and New Zealand may result in more cumbersome labelling requirements for producers.

• There is high competition from overseas related with sourcing issues.

• Global cocoa shortage may create difficulties in the short-term.

**Industry Analysis**

Whilst specialist, luxury or organic retailers do not feel the same price sensitivity, they are not able to secure a large volume of customers, and may have no choice but to commit to long term supplier contracts in order to secure a steady supply, quality, or specifically prepared products. Potential new entrants may struggle to compete with the aggressive marketing and pricing policies of the existing players. Nonetheless, relatively low entry and exit costs, the emergence of thriving health and ethical niches which are sheltered from direct competition from current players, and strong historical growth offer attractive prospects.

**Buyer Power**

Specialty, luxury or organic retailers can, due to the high level of product differentiation, justify price levels that would otherwise be unsustainable; yet the limited volume of consumers places restraints on the power of such players.

Consumers are brand loyal and particular about what they eat, which reduces their power, but a wide variety and immense product differentiation offsets this. In some cases the buyer is an organised retailer which could place pressure on a manufacturer, especially for someone who is looking to scale their operations and reach.

**Supplier Power**

Where possible, long term contractual obligations are avoided and switching costs are kept to a minimum. With a firm hold on key distribution channels, the leading retailers can dominate negotiations with certain suppliers. Smaller retailers, such as specialist, luxury or organic outlets may find such negotiations difficult.

The limited number of suppliers in niche areas and the centrality of product quality or preparation type restrict the available range of sourcing options. With switching costs subsequently higher, the
balance of power shifts somewhat from smaller retailers to specialist suppliers. As the world faces a cocoa shortage the power shifts towards the suppliers. With more consumers demanding sustainable food production, the pressure to meet demands increases, thus keeping supplier power high.

**Threat of new entrants to the market**
Potential entrants may be encouraged by the relatively low entry and exit costs. There has been a rapid growth of health consciousness, plus an increasing number of consumers opting for a more ethical or organic range of goods. This forms attractive avenues for new entrants seeking to move into a niche area that offers inbuilt protection from pricing pressures and mainstream marketing.

Chocolate manufacturing requires high capital investment, high rentals and labour costs, the distribution system is in the hands of few, and marketing expenditure is gradually increasing which adds to the barriers to entry. Apart from sourcing, Australian food label regulations also add to the concerns. Thus the threat of new entrants is moderate.

**Threat of substitutes**
Chocolates are seen as snacks or dessert foods, thus a high threat of substitutes can arise from foods like cakes, ice creams, sweets, and biscuits etc. Apart from this, luxury chocolates are competing with premium desserts, restaurants, sweets, and food items. A consumer spending on high quality chocolate might look instead towards coffee, fruits, etc. The threat of this is low to medium.

**Degree of rivalry**
The degree of rivalry is high because the chocolate industry has entrenched global players, while speciality chocolate is highly fragmented. In 2008, only seven major players accounted for more than 70% market share.

Though specialist stores for premium/luxury chocolate offerings are highly differentiated, they lack reach because of low economies of scale and distribution muscle. Thus, they can face threats from existing major players, especially those with a heritage story of their own, who can launch product lines that compete with speciality chocolates.

The growth of niche players, boutique shops etc. has created a wide variety of options with low switching costs for consumers. This, along with threat of limited margins, has added to the degree of rivalry. If South Australia decides to invest in this industry, there is still a moderate chance of making a niche product that may occupy the luxury food segment.
Figure B2. Roadmap for chocolate as a luxury food
Luxury brand marketing for chocolate

Provenance

Most chocolate brands have so far utilised the country-of-origin effect, but only for the art of producing it. Hence most European brands leverage their regional roots to the chocolatier history of their nations.

However, recently country-of-origin effect is also being witnessed in the source of the ingredient, for example Ecuadorian cocoa for Toak Chocolates. The history defines the product that is created today in addition to the uniqueness and rarity of the experiences in authentic taste and smell. Brands are also increasingly relying on the regions that are popular for the method of acquisition (c.f. fairtrade), sustainability practices, processing techniques, grower’s knowledge etc.

Pricing

The main ingredient for chocolates – cocoa - is often mass produced. The original beans are becoming rare due to the very specific farming conditions required to grow the nut. Thus prices are rising as the product is becoming scarce. Luxury brands also add the value of the chocolate making process, as is done for wine, as this can vary and is important for the taste of the product. Rather than price for the health benefit or taste, the cost to the consumer is the acquisition cost of rare ingredients and the unique taste/experience.

Publicity

Chocolate brands and boutiques see value in spending money for events, tours, workshops on tasting, preparing and introducing the rich history of their brands.

This would also involve sponsoring studies, trade shows, innovative research in improving tastes, textures etc. TV shows with the most glamorous chocolatiers/chefs are a means of introducing chocolate as part of a place or part of a unique culture/tradition, since chocolate making is also seen as a tradition and an art, with references to nostalgic childhood memories.

Sampling for new launches is the most common method to help introduce the product, for example Lindt Master Chocolatiers. In an entirely unique way, Lindt represents the brand, the premium products, the uncompromising quality, and the company’s all-round expertise in chocolate-making and is recognised by consumers everywhere. Some brands prefer to use publicity only for limited edition tours, launches and workshops.

Position

Dedicated luxury store formats such delicatessens, speciality stores and boutique shops are located in prime locations of main cities. Some chocolate brands also have their own unique stores dedicated to the entire brand collection and involving the consumer in an experience of the brand’s heritage and its brand DNA (personage).

For example, Ghirardelli opened a store in a prime location on Hollywood Boulevard, close to the famous Disney cinema El Capitan, and near the famous stars on the Walk of Fame. After years of being exclusive to Belgium, Draps began the international Godiva expansion in 1958 by opening a Godiva boutique in Paris on the fashionable Rue St. Honoré. In 2010, Godiva opened its first store in Turkey in the heart of Istanbul. Located in the luxury shopping area of Nisantasi, this flagship store exemplifies a strategic entry into a new market for Godiva.

Persona

Chocolate brands tend to choose their founders as the building blocks of their persona, which takes time to build and requires awareness of roots and heritage. For example, Max Brenner’s tagline
“chocolate by the bald man” is clearly using their founder as an inspiration and a brand ambassador. The fact that the founder learned the art in Paris, after which he returned to Israel, is often promoted by the brand to draw upon the authenticity of the product.

Certain brands prefer to use brand ambassadors to build personality traits quickly through association. Since 2009, tennis champion Roger Federer has been the global brand ambassador for his favourite chocolate, Lindt. He uniquely embodies Lindt and Sprüngli’s underlying values of Swiss-origin, premium quality and passion, and, with his global presence and popularity, he helps to establish the Lindt brand in the main markets.

Personage, or brand DNA
The core values that establish a chocolate brand’s style and insignia can be in the founders/chocolate-makers/innovators or, in some cases, muses or inspirations that guide the brand practices.

For example, Godiva announced an exciting change to the Lady Godiva Program – expanding from honouring one inspiring woman each year to honouring three. Godiva surprised this year’s honourees – Erin Dinan (One Sandwich at a Time), Stephanie Bowman (One Heart for Women & Children), and Molly Rockamann (EarthDance Farms) – at a breakfast at the Rent the Runway Showroom at Henri Bendel in New York City. Godiva will always be seen as the lady in gold.

Paucity
Rarity is used through limited edition products, with packaging and location as marketing tools. The award winning product lines are also falsely used to create the effect of paucity amongst products. There are also seasonal advantages such as Easter chocolates, for example.

To help this category luxury brands create demand through scarcity. For example, the Godiva G collection, with its exclusive gift packs and numbered chocolates creates the desired effect of scarcity. Their limited edition gift item include a ‘handcrafted partnership’, and the opportunity to “celebrate in style with these exclusive gift sets that pair our delicious Belgian chocolate with beautiful metal serving pieces by American-born artist Michael Aram. Each Aram creation is entirely handmade. Long after the last chocolate is enjoyed, your thoughtful gift will endure”.

Their seasonal range has the same intent. Some brands claim the unique processes and ingredients that make the product a rarity and hence luxuriously expensive. For example Toak Chocolates focuses on the sensory analysis of chocolate and hence is able to earn supernormal profits.

Performance
Chocolate brands rely on the taste, visual appeal and aroma of the product for performance. Hence packaging that is unique, easily recognisable and associated with the brand, exclusive and classic in appeal is used.

Often stores that house luxury brands will keep samples, and use visually stimulating merchandising to deliver the promised experience. In some cases, brands also give consumers special gifts or memorabilia to keep. Often brands use customer memberships, clubs, and communities to foster their relationship and keep the experience intact, like for example the Godiva ‘Lady’ program.

Packaging
Luxury chocolate packaging must ensure that the functional benefits of the package are very high (it must keep the product safe from humidity, lock in the aroma and taste, and protect thin bars/pieces/ caramels/ inner shapes and so on during transport and storage). Brands use packaging
to build association with either the ingredients or the brand DNA (depending on which of these better communicates the uniqueness/brand promise).
Seafood
This subsector generally includes abalone, lobster, oysters, tuna and caviar. Key species groups in South Australia include southern Bluefin tuna (aquaculture), southern rock lobster (wild catch), prawns (wild catch), abalone (wild catch), and oysters (aquaculture).

The gross value of fisheries production in South Australia rose by 1% ($3 million), from $437 million in 2011–12 to $441 million in 2012–13. The aquaculture sector accounted for the largest proportion of this value, making up $243 million (55%) of the state’s total production value. Wild-catch production was valued slightly lower, at $198 million, accounting for the remaining 45% of the state’s total fisheries value.

Opportunity landscape to trade up
The opportunity landscape for seafood and seafood subsegments is shown in Table B6 below.

Table B6. Opportunity landscape for luxury seafood

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Abalone</th>
<th>Lobster</th>
<th>Tuna</th>
<th>Oyster</th>
<th>Caviar</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Strengths</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High value product</td>
<td><strong>Australia</strong> positioned as world’s finest producers of lobsters demanding almost double the margins as compared to competitor nations, recent FTA with China limits competition and supports national industry especially during supply shortage, strong government support.</td>
<td>Australia’s clean/green image</td>
<td>Clean waters</td>
<td>Australia’s clean/green image</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clean water – good environmental image</td>
<td>oro in</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Increasing demand of product,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Potential for technology development and streamlined systems aiming to shorter grow out period and lower mortality resulting in higher labour efficiency.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Australia’s clean/green image</td>
<td>Clean waters</td>
<td>Australia’s clean/green image</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Climates conditions suitable for optimum seafood growth</td>
<td>Good product image</td>
<td>Climates conditions suitable for optimum fish growth</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Close proximity to Asian markets</td>
<td>Active industry associations (SAOGA &amp; OYSA)</td>
<td>Close proximity to Asian markets</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>High product quality; innovative industry</td>
<td>Australian oysters all have unique characteristics depending on where they are grown.</td>
<td>High product quality; innovative industry</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Recent government investment in Open Ocean Aquaculture species and sites</td>
<td></td>
<td>Recent government investment in Open Ocean Aquaculture species and sites</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Locally available brood stock and fishers experienced in their capture</td>
<td></td>
<td>Substitute industry (for caviar) well established (salmon and trout roe)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Experienced government marine fish culture units</td>
<td></td>
<td>Experienced government marine fish culture units</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Industry interest in culturing the species</td>
<td></td>
<td>Industry interest in culturing the species</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>High demand of sturgeon caviar but low</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abalone</td>
<td>Lobster</td>
<td>Tuna</td>
<td>Oyster</td>
<td>Caviar</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Weakness</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>sustainability limiting options for consumers.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slow grow out period.</td>
<td>Industry fragmentation slows flexibility and adaptability to sudden changes, High costs (labour, transport, capital investments) make Australian Lobsters uncompetitive against Asian producers, High R&amp;D costs, increasing costs of maintaining sustainability within the industry, industry in declining stage with reduction and exit of many farmers and producers. Enterprises declined due to reduced production and a decreasing number of licensees.</td>
<td>Uncertainty about future of wild stock</td>
<td>Low availability and quality of spat</td>
<td>High labour costs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High capital expense.</td>
<td>Dependence on single market/currency</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>High gestation period (low growth, slow maturing fish)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poor infrastructure esp. 3 Phase power</td>
<td>High cost structure</td>
<td>Low margins, short selling season</td>
<td></td>
<td>High transport costs as compared to competitors</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Labour intensive</td>
<td>High dependence on imported wet feed</td>
<td>High labour costs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abalone vulnerability to high temperatures, lack of skills, limited co-op marketing, and high transport costs affect margins.</td>
<td></td>
<td>High transport costs as compared to competitors</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<p>| <strong>Opportunity</strong> | Breeding to reduce grow out time | Rising demand, Diversification of markets, improving transparency in supply chain and cheaper logistics, | Opportunities | Both export and domestic market development | Declining wild caught fish supply as nations becoming strict on protecting the |
| | Develop new export markets | Industry young – low on learning curve | | Value adding opportunities | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abalone</th>
<th>Lobster</th>
<th>Tuna</th>
<th>Oyster</th>
<th>Caviar</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Co-operation between farms to enhance market potential</td>
<td>New business models as with lobster shack diversifying sources of revenue (other than sale of wild caught lobsters), molecular gastronomy has re-introduced rock lobsters into fine dining, evolving consumer tastes and preferences, higher disposable incomes</td>
<td>Adding value to the product</td>
<td>Improving farming practices</td>
<td>endangered species (sturgeon)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Investment in R&amp;D to improve sector profitability (via operational efficiency)</td>
<td>Pelleted feeds</td>
<td>Further processing</td>
<td>Declining wild caught fisheries</td>
<td>Industry young-low on learning curve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Industry young-low on learning curve</td>
<td>Focus on organic processes of removing the eggs from the fish, more humane ways of processing the product with limited damage to environment &amp; the species.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Increasing population and demand for fish</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Increasing awareness of the health benefits of eating fish</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Improving technology for offshore grow-out</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Increasing government interest in tuna culture</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Commonwealth and State grants available</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Threats**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abalone</th>
<th>Lobster</th>
<th>Tuna</th>
<th>Oyster</th>
<th>Caviar</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Disease outbreak (he abalone virus Ganglioneuritis which is fast spreading and lethal to abalone stocks)</td>
<td>New Zealand fast catching up with much higher productivity and cheap produce of lobsters, Lobsters highly sensitive to global warming, El Nino effect has raised concerns about shortage (diseases and premature deaths), little to no product differentiation exposes players and growing cheaper supply from South Africa, Cuba and Vietnam for lobsters that are farmed.</td>
<td>Propagation of NBT/SBT</td>
<td>Lease/licence approval process</td>
<td>Government regulations and differences in aquaculture legislations could hurt Australian farmers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Increased power costs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Market collapse in Asia</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Volatile currency, global warming affecting farm output, high risk industry, medium return (20-25%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Industry analysis

It should be noted that many issues facing the seafood sector are shared by the industries for abalone, oysters, tuna, lobster and caviar, as referenced in individual sections of this analysis below.

Abalone

Supplier power
A low concentration of suppliers diminishes their power. However, limited number of suppliers increases their bargaining power. The inputs required for the industry are similar, with little or no difference. In addition, distribution is highly diverse as it is mostly dependent on export. There are no economies of scale, and this, plus vulnerability to threats from producer of cuts in production added to export dependency, exposure to currency fluctuations, and high transport costs reduces supplier bargaining power.

Buyer power
Since Australian suppliers deal with premium high quality products, the consumer has low price sensitivity. The premium products are important to the customer, which reduces the power of the consumer. Awareness about industry concerns of over-farming, disease, and sustainable farming practices will also help increase preference for Australian abalone. Thus power of buyer is decreasing (moderate to low).

Threat of new entrants to the market
High capital requirements, risky working lifestyle, strict government regulations and quotas (licences) to preserve biodiversity for abalone farming are factors, along with imitation of geographic factors, the high learning curve (new competitors must spend time and money studying the market, packaging and process modifications which affects profits), government agency (zonal co-ops/agencies to promote local industry) limits to competition. These factors, plus over-exposure to few markets, low domestic demand, and the need for international logistics and distribution expertise etc. keeps the threat of new entrants low.

Substitutes
Abalone has a delectable identity of its own and has strings attached to its luxury identity. However, seasonality and crop failure may affect the consumption in a particular year. Recent awareness of...
vulnerability to diseases, environmental issues such as oil spills affecting abalone’s metal content etc. can raise concerns and force consumers to give up.

However, any substitute to Australian product is inferior and substantial differentiation based on region and processes from farm to shelf limits threat of substitutes.

Farming difficulties, due to the molluscs being highly sensitive to temperature, pH balance etc. can further reduce the threat of substitutes. China is currently leading in abalone aquaculture but geographic location preferences negate that effect.

Degree of Rivalry
Government limits domestic competition by becoming a facilitating agency for the small farms, thus limiting the amount of abalone to be cultured. Asian markets are fast growth regions which reduces the degree of rivalry. Australian products, however, compete with international products, which place some pressure on profitability. Very low degree of rivalry since demand outgrows supply.

Luxury brand marketing for abalone
Provenance
Companies usually build on the purity and richness of the geographic location that breeds the particular abalone species. However in the case of jade tiger abalone, it is the history and the story that builds the product. The abalone is presented to the consumer as specially picked from the most remote, untouched regions of the world.

Pricing
Pricing is based on supply demand dynamics. Any disease outbreak affects the industry as a whole because even higher prices of sales cannot make up for the loss of profits resulting from low production. This is because the market is also dependent on import prices. Thus, added value becomes extremely important.

Publicity
Companies (wholesalers and retailers) build the image of luxury by participating in awards that reward the finest catch (thus certifying the finest taste, texture, visual appeal, quality production etc.) to the consumer. Tours of remote growing regions (including farming processes), food tastings, efforts towards improving sustainability and minimising environmental impact are also used as publicity tools.

Position
Limited shores and bays within Australia’s zones are accessible for commercial farming. Companies build on these locations to sell their product. Often bars and cafés are also opened in close proximity to support this branding exercise. For wholesalers and retailers, the product is sold in premium speciality or gourmet shops since it is an expensive product, and not available for the masses due to its scarcity.

Persona
The main focus for abalone owners is on sustainability, and they strive to achieve premium quality and taste. Cooking and catching techniques also become traits of the product (i.e. certain kinds of cooking of a particular brand enhances particular tastes). For example, Jade Tiger Abalone™ is bred for its unique combination of sweetness and medium texture making it the ‘gourmet’s choice’. It is bred exclusively by The Craig Mostyn Group and is a cherished delicacy worldwide. Craig Mostyn owns and runs Australia’s largest abalone farm and focuses on direct delivery of live, frozen and canned abalone from their in-house export facilities.
Personage, or brand DNA
Chefs are the prime actors that build abalone brands. A few farms also build on their heritage and historical significance, and build their product value upon the visions and values of their founders/owners.

Being ‘green and clean’ becomes very important for the end consumers. Thus, most brands also strive to reflect their farming practices, closeness to nature and richness in contribution to the environment through all the elements of the marketing mix (packaging, place etc.), technology used, ad methods for cultivation etc.

For example, Brand Eyre Peninsula (Australia’s ‘Seafood Frontier’) is a marketing initiative to differentiate foods sourced from this region that have met the highest standards of environmental management, sustainability, innovation and quality, and is recognised by food connoisseurs as a certified and authentic Eyre Peninsula product. Brand Eyre Peninsula aims to position Eyre Peninsula as the one and only Seafood Frontier in Australia – the original and the best.

Paucity
Because abalone supply is very limited, scarcity is often used as a measure of premiumness. Specific regionality can also add variety to the tastes and texture of abalone, thus adding to the limited availability (seasonal features also create the same effect).

Performance
Performance is often not perceived at the end consumer level, because of many value additions are made on the product’s way to the plate. Hence the onus of promoting product performance lies mostly with the chef and/or the restaurant. Their task is to recommend to their consumers certain brands through PR campaigns and publicity efforts, making the client portfolio a surrogate for the performance of the actual product. For example, Ralph Tasmanian Seafood boasts “Value-added abalone products now include rumbled meat, chilled meat, retort pouches, IQF meat, vacuum-packed meat, canned meat, dried meat as well as abalone shells and salted abalone viscera”.

Packaging
Canned abalone is usually packed in tin cans with intense colours, gold rimmed logos, and seals. The intent of packages is to create the impression of finest quality and enhance the experience of fine taste and elegance. Brands also use additional information like awards and recognitions, signage and elaborate artwork on logos to build resonance with exclusivity.

Gift packs are a common form of packaging for abalone. They can be very opulent and meaningful, with each element of the design playing a significant role in portraying the brand heritage and identity. Most brands focus on the display of the product and the experience of opening the pack.

Lobster
Supplier power
A low concentration of suppliers diminishes their bargaining power with retailers at a global level, who have the option of looking for cheaper options from emerging suppliers such as New Zealand and Cuba.

However, limited number of suppliers within a protected geographical location, especially in a quota regulated industry, increases their bargaining power. The inputs required for the industry are similar, with little or no difference. In addition, distribution is highly diverse as it is mostly dependent on export. There are no economies of scale, and this plus vulnerability to threats from producer of cuts
in production, added to export dependency, exposure to currency fluctuations, and high transport costs reduces supplier bargaining power to moderate.

_Buyer power_
Similar to abalone.

_Threat of new entrants to market_
Similar to abalone, plus over-exposure to few markets, low domestic demand for premium Australian lobster, decreasing stock, and the fact that lobster is highly sensitive to climactic conditions etc. keeps the threat of new entrants low.

_Substitutes_
Similar to abalone, plus recent awareness of vulnerability to diseases has raised concerns about sustainability of the product, pushing demand for farmed lobster.

However, any substitute to Australian product is inferior, and substantial differentiation based on region and processes (from farm to shelf) limits threat of substitutes. Farming difficulties, as lobsters are highly sensitive to temperature, pH balance etc., further reduces the threat of substitutes.

_Degree of Rivalry_
Government limits domestic competition by becoming a facilitating agency for supplier based on their zonal location, limiting the amount of lobsters to be caught. Asian markets are fast growth regions for the product, which reduces the degree of rivalry. Australian products, however, compete with international products which places some pressure on profitability. Very low degree of rivalry since demand outgrows supply.

_Luxury brand marketing for lobster_

_Provenance_
Taste and techniques vary slightly, based on the region in which the lobsters are caught. Some lobster farms place high value on the historical significance of their regions.

_Pricing_
Pricing is not only set through supply and demand, it is also dependent on competitor pricing. For example, supermarkets offer lower prices to draw more customers. However for luxury brands this proves advantageous. They raise prices (on the basis of the perceived product value) as price indicates higher quality among competitors. Pricing is determined mainly through supply demand due to quota systems followed in Australia for catching lobsters.

_Publicity_
Companies (wholesalers and retailers) build the image of luxury by participating in awards that reward the finest catch, thus certifying the finest taste, texture, visual appeal, quality production etc. to the consumer. Tours of the remote regions (including farming processes), food tastings, and efforts towards improving sustainability and minimising environmental impact are also used as tools.

A new concept is the ‘celebrity chef recipe’ that builds on the chef’s artistry. Celebrity chefs who are popular in fine dining, and fine dining restaurant owners incorporate farmed lobsters and add to the unique selling proposition (USP) to the otherwise less distinguishable product. The chef becomes the spokesperson.

_Position_
Limited shores and bays within Australia’s zones are accessible for commercial lobster farming. Companies build on location to sell their product. Tours around the region to explore its richness
gives hands-on experience with the growing process and quality of the food, and helps build affinity for the region. For wholesalers and retailers, the product is sold as premium. Companies like Lobstershack promote their location and their dining places to build their brand’s identity.

**Persona**
The main focus for lobster owners is on sustainability, driving them to achieve premium quality and taste in a sustainable manner. Cooking and catching techniques also become traits of the product (certain kinds of cooking of a particular brands enhances particular tastes etc.).

For example, the Western Australian Rock Lobster Fishery was one of the first fisheries in the world to receive Marine Stewardship Council Certification for sustainable fishing practices. As part of the processing procedure, after steaming the lobster, they are quenched in sea water from the pristine, A-Class Marine National Park from whence they came.

**Personage, or brand DNA**
Chefs are the prime associations that build lobster brands. A few farms also build on their heritage and historical significance, and build their product value upon the visions and values of their founders/owners. Being ‘green and clean’ has become a very important factor for end consumers. Thus, most brands also strive to reflect their practices, their closeness to nature and richness in contribution to the environment through the elements of the marketing mix (packaging, place etc.), technology used, and methods for cultivation etc.

**Paucity**
The government is imposing marine parks and no go fishing zones in prime hotspots, threatening the future of commercial fishing. New product launches by fisheries and restaurants add to the scarcity of the value added product. Most brands build scarcity through the unique taste of lobster through geographic advantage. An example is Ferguson Australia, who report:

> “On a positive note, Ferguson Australia is proud to be unveiling a delicious new addition to its product range, gourmet Lobster Salt. There has been considerable demand for Ferguson to expand on its lobster range, and Lobster Salt, with its truly exquisite flavour, is an easy way to add a touch of class to any meal. Many high profile chefs are already showing great interest in the Lobster Salt which is due to be released early next year. Ferguson Australia recently presented the Lobster Salt at a lunch with Australian food and wine icon Lyndey Milan, to terrific feedback.”

**Performance**
Performance is often not perceived at the end consumer level, because of many value additions on the way to the plate. Hence the onus of performance lies mostly with the chef/restaurant etc, to recommend to their consumers certain lobster brands through PR campaigns and publicity efforts, so the client portfolio becomes a surrogate for the performance of the actual lobster product.

Some brands, such as Lobstershack are trying to break the barriers and increase the involvement of the name of the brand throughout the dining experience.

**Packaging**
Lobster packaging is primarily focused on functional packaging attributes. Brands focus on packaging materials and design that would best preserve the quality of the product, and this often requires hiring agencies who are experts in seafood packaging and transportation.

However, brands also use logos, colours and signage to establish brand identity. Premium brands also make sure that their persona is reflected in the presentation or the aesthetic value of the
packaging. For most brands, reflecting sustainability and innovation forms the backbone of their brand value.

**Tuna**

**Supplier power**
A low concentration of suppliers diminishes their power. The inputs required for the industry are similar with little or no difference. Distribution is highly diverse, as it is mostly dependent on export. There are no economies of scale, and vulnerability to threats from producers of cuts in production, added to export dependency, exposure to currency fluctuations, and high transport costs reduces supplier bargaining power.

**Buyer power**
Similar to abalone.

**Threat of new entrants**
Factors include high capital requirements, strict government regulations and ceilings on tuna farming to preserve biodiversity. Limitation of geographic factors, the high learning curve (new competitors must spend time and money studying the market, packaging, and process modifications which affects profits), and low profitability reduce the threat of new entrants substantially to low.

**Substitutes**
Similar to abalone. Asia has a developed taste for tuna, as has Europe. However there are only limited substitution options that taste like tuna, and substantial product differentiation based on region and process (from farm to shelf) limits threat of substitutes (low to moderate).

**Degree of Rivalry**
Government limits domestic competition by becoming a facilitating agency for the small farms, limiting the amount of tuna to be cultured. Asian markets are fast growth regions which reduces the degree of rivalry. Australian products compete with cheap international products which puts pressure on profitability. The domestic players are unable to compete with imports to the nation and hence are dependent on exports. Thus degree of rivalry is medium.

**Luxury brand marketing for tuna**

**Provenance**
Co-operatives and brands build their unique selling proposition (USP) on the heritage of the region in which they catch or cultivate tuna. The main focus of the brands is the ecological impact of their catching or aquaculturing practices, along with the direct impact of geography and topography of the region.

Some brands also build associations through their rich experience and deep roots with the regions. For example, Fish4ever charges a premium for its variety of exotic tuna, primarily because of its partnerships with numerous artisan fisheries. Thus availability of myriad tastes in tuna helps them garner a premium. They also provide traceable tuna which adds to the authenticity of their promise.

**Pricing**
The pricing of tuna is mostly set by demand and supply. However price of the first stock (especially of Bluefin tuna in Tokyo) if related to specific event or traditions, is open to auction, and hence the quality of fish affects the price immensely. The geographical location of the fish has limited effect, as consumer is still unaware/ less concerned about it than about taste. Fresh fish is priced according to its look, taste, texture, taste, fat content etc. and chefs decide on the qualities that best suit their culinary skills and requirements.
Publicity
Shows, conferences, films, talks, seminars, new product launch promotions, media relations, partnerships, etc. are usually employed as publicity elements for farmed tuna. Heritage, new technology, sustainability, traceability, moral responsibility, and product story are often the themes of media conversations.

Position
Availability governs the brand association and builds brand equity. Usually premium and luxury brands are not available at mass outlets. They often focus on demand from direct sources such as restaurants, event organisers, delicatessens, speciality outlets, artisans etc., but this is not a universal trend. Some brands choose to sell through major supermarkets, such as ASDA, as well.

Persona
Tours, awards, and certifications are used to build brand associations with the values of a company or a co-operative. Basically, brand association is anything which stays in the customer’s mind about that brand. Tours also build brand association, relating it to innovation, advanced technology and processes etc. This helps consumers experience the brand and uses ambience, environment and tastes (culinary experiences) to establish brand’s association. Coverage of sustainability, reports, digital marketing, promotion on Facebook, and collaboration with government agencies help a brand to be seen as responsible, concerned and authentic. Companies try to establish reputation and build trust among their consumers to win them over with premium tuna.

Personage, or brand DNA
The chef and the recipe become the major source of creating brand identity. Tuna farmers leverage the brand values and taste authority of experts, restaurant owners, chef specialities etc. to promote their tuna.

For chefs, it is the region and the treatment of the fish that lay down the path for brand associations. While some chefs prefer to talk about the origin of the fish, others focus on presenting the tuna as simply cooked as possible, with minimal additional ingredients, and only pairing other foods or drinks to emphasise the quality of the tuna. Thus, it is the overall experience of the food, rather than the particular dish/ambience/flavour that communicates the brand DNA to the consumers.

Paucity
Paucity is artificially created, as tuna is not actually rare. This can be through seasonal farming, or adding unique tastes and pairings with specific fish (related to their cultivation provenance). It is also created by limiting supply to particular stores.

Performance
Celebrity chefs, the product’s presence on menus of the finest restaurants, and association with prestigious clientele are some methods adopted by brands to establish performance. Certifications and awards are the most common tools used by brands to communicate their performance, as consumers lack general awareness about the finest traits of quality tuna.

Packaging
Frozen tuna packaging tends to be artistic and colourful, and often includes representation of the actual product. The colours, logos, information and packaging style define the uniqueness of the brands, since product differentiation is not easily discernible by most consumers. Packaging therefore plays a surrogate role in communicating the quality and exclusivity of the product inside.
Use of fibre-based chilled seafood packaging, such as chillitainers, is used by some brands to ensure product quality, and preserves the taste promised by brands in a sustainable manner. Packaging and transport techniques can also ensure the pristine quality of the fish, enhancing the ‘freshly caught’ image while still maintaining the hygienic value.

Most packaging is limited to cans and cardboard freezer packs; otherwise the fish is directly sold to restaurants. However, for consumer packs, the ability to communicate sustainability of the product, traceability and reliability on the brands is of utmost importance. The packaging trends that have emerged include convenience, ability to preserve freshness, and ability to relay transparency of procurement. For fresh/frozen tuna, presentation and cleanliness are of utmost importance to enhance the palatability of the product.

Oysters

Supplier power
The supplier takes the highest risk, especially with the threat of disease, variability of temperatures, weather conditions, and variance in quality, and may not be able to fetch high value for his/her product. Apart from this, most farmers are small and lack the ability to expand, thus limiting their production volume and therefore their reach. Poor competitiveness against commodity markets in China, Japan, high transport costs and lack of consistency weaken supplier power for most. Only a few are able to maintain higher than normal profits. Oysters are often used as loss leaders (Shane Comskey), therefore suppliers have low to moderate power.

Buyer power
In this case the buyer can be the restaurant or business that would purchase one or more oyster batches. Since most value addition happens in the chef’s kitchen, the power of the buyer increases. Other than country of origin affect, Australian oysters all have unique characteristics, depending on where they are grown. This shifts the balance back, as is evident in media reports indicating how farmers are reaching out to the end consumer with their innovative style and experimenting with diverse oyster dishes and menu items109.

Threat of new entrants
New models such as oyster bars or cafes have started to crop up, with promising results. Thus low value add, coupled with low switching costs of consumers, brings uncertainties to this business model. However, shuckers and wholesalers have significant integration, thus decreasing profitability. Margins in the middle chain are even lower than horticulture. There is a low threat for the middle chain, as the industry suffers from technological constraints, low margins, and high costs of maintenance.

Substitutes:
Similar to abalone. Asia has a developed a taste for oysters, as has Europe.

Degree of Rivalry
Low profitability, high fragmentation, and formation of government co-ops to help growers/farmers have created high competitiveness in the industry. Stagnant profitability of the industry, and lack of a real value add weakens the farmer’s position, thus placing pressure on the price point. However, the Australian Government has strict regulations about the quality of food, and this gives oysters a brand advantage, offsetting the previous effect. Generally the degree of rivalry is medium to high.

According to the latest ABARES Australian Fisheries Statistics (ABARES, 2014), the entire NSW oyster industry is worth a modest $38 million — and the Clyde River accounts for roughly 10% of $38 million. The total value of oyster production Australia-wide is $97.3 million. Medium – low.

Luxury brand marketing for oysters

Provenance
Farmers relate their product’s value to their heritage and family history to establish authenticity, and introduce a story that defines their product because there is little USP in the processing of this species. The origin of the farm and owner becomes the focus for product features.

Sampling and tasting of oysters on the farm is a method used to create and build an identity of the product. Oysters are identified by the region in which they are cultured and Australian oyster farmers sell their oysters based on where they are grown. Examples include Coffin Bay and Smoky Bay in South Australia, Moulting Bay and Blackman Bay in Tasmania for Pacific Oysters, and Cape Hawk (Roc species). These regions are touted by suppliers as the best regions (clean, green, sustainable and meaty) for cultivating oysters.

Other experiences can be added, for example the ambience, smell, and touch of the product and by promoting the coastal trails where oysters are farmed. This trend is gaining popularity for example, Ewan McAsh with his farm on Clyde River, focuses on the ‘process and art’ of growing oysters. The notion is not new — Gary Rodley (Tathra oysters), Steve Feletti (Moonlight Flats) and a handful of others share similar methods that are changing the way consumers experience oysters.

Pricing
Pricing is based on supply demand dynamics. Any disease outbreak affects the industry as a whole because even higher prices of sales do not make up for the loss of profits due to low production, because the market is also dependent on import prices. Thus, added value becomes extremely important, however it is also noted that top quality range products have not increased much since the Pacific Oyster Mortality Syndrome (POMS) outbreak.

Publicity
Most oyster farms are small and fragmented. They market to their domestic and international consumers with the aid of relevant Government agencies and/or industry organistaions. Thus the state’s oyster farmers become part of a national agency which is then held responsible to promote their crop.

This involves tastings, samplings and newsletters from the agencies, providing the latest news from the local industry. It also involves promoting the different farms, along with generating sales through partnerships with wine estates, restaurants and international clients. For example, oyster growers may partner with winemakers to create new combinations that are then featured in various connoisseur magazines, newsletters, and in competitions. Some growers use awards to partner with restaurants and chefs looking for unique and new flavours, for example Moonlight Flat oysters.

Position
The places where oysters are available become an essential part of the brand communication for this product. Some companies sell only through the direct model to ensure finest quality of product delivered (fresh chucked, personally packaged and delivered live can be some of the constraints that make the direct model of delivery more reliable).

Companies may prefer to use their own centres and outlets to sell. Some of the companies that associate their brands strongly with values such as sustainability like to deal with
supermarkets/stores that only sell brands complying to international standards, enabling them to associate their product with stringent standards and finest quality. However, there are also a few brands that do not adhere to strict norms on their distribution model. It is clear that the former strategy is seen to be more in line with luxury and premium quality oyster brands (smaller specialised farms).

**Persona**

Oyster farmers promote their brands on the basis of how close they are to natural methods of cultivation, how sustainable the product is, and how precise and careful they are in developing the perfect product for their consumers. The founders/farmers become the persona for the brand, but that is not enough. Certifications and awards are essential to display authenticity of the principles/values that are core to the brand. It is important to note that anything that is not mass, and not easily customisable or flexible in responding to consumer demand, but rather is the other way around (ruled by seasons of cultivation, timings of visit, direct vs. indirect ordering, packaging etc.) is able to create the persona and build equity.

**Personage, or brand DNA**

Brands in oyster cultivation use the values of their farmers/creators as a fundamental element that is reflected in any communication. For example, Ralston Brothers Oysters focus on the principles/visions of their families in preserving old traditional cultivation styles. Therefore, their communication, packaging, availability all reflect these guiding principles. Their signature brands, the Waterfall Oyster and the Heritage Oyster, both boast a distinctive flavour experience and preserve their unique shape. For Moonlight Oysters, French styles in packaging, food pairings, and restaurants (known for French cuisine/ specialities etc.) govern their brand communication to create an association with French oyster strains. However, for their signature brands, the personality of their farmers is used to create the brand identity.

**Paucity**

It is important to note that anything that is not mass, and not easily customisable or flexible in responding to consumer demand but rather is ruled by seasons of cultivation, timings of visit, direct vs. indirect ordering, packaging and so on, creates scarcity for the product. Therefore many cultivators provide oysters only in the prime seasons and close for the rest of the year. Apart from this, quotas and restrictions by the Government limit production, adding to the effect. This creates high demand during seasons of availability.

**Performance**

As discussed above, brands must deliver on their promise, however lack of consumer awareness about the quality and taste can become a hindrance. This is overcome through certifications, celebrity chef referrals, promotion and communication of strict production policies in newsletters, media releases, and advertisements. Apart from this, invitations to tour the region and investigate the cultivation process add to the authenticity of the brand proposition.

**Packaging**

Brands build association to the origin, farm and/or the artist/celebrity they associate themselves with through use of unique styles, packaging materials, aesthetics and presentation.

Sometimes brands also create packaging to enhance the experience of the taste and texture by including food and wine pairings. This helps the brand to establish its own identity and unique savoury experience.
An example of packaging enhancing the experience is the selection of Cromaris oysters’ packaging in The Dieline’s design selection. The Dieline is the world’s most influential web portal focused on packaging design, with over a million readers, and to be mentioned by the Dieline means recognition as having one of the best product packaging designs in the world. Designed by Bruketa & Zinic OM, Cromaris present carefully selected oysters sitting in a bed of thinly shredded paper inside an unfinished wooden box made of birch. The box is minimally painted with an abstract pattern, representing the oysters it contains as well as a topographical map of the location where oysters were caught. The packaging also includes lime pieces to promote flavour pairings.

Caviar

Demand
The Swiss and French are the biggest caviar consumers followed by Americans, British and Japanese. Canadian caviar consumption is relatively small due to the size and composition of the population, but steady, with a trend to increase.

Supplier power
The low concentration of suppliers diminishes their power. The inputs required for the industry are similar, with little or no difference. Distribution is highly diverse as mostly dependent on export. There are no economies of scale, and vulnerability to threats from producers of cuts in production, added to export dependency, exposure to currency fluctuations, and high transport costs reduce supplier bargaining power.

Buyer power
Since Australian suppliers deal with premium high quality products, the consumer has low price sensitivity. Product is important to the customer, which reduces the power of the consumer. Awareness of industry concerns regarding over-farming, disease, and organic farming will also help increase preference for Australian sturgeon. Thus power of buyer is decreasing (moderate to low).

Threat of new entrants
High capital requirements, strict government regulations and ceilings on sturgeon farming to preserve biodiversity, along with the limitations of geographic factors, the high learning curve (new competitors must spend time and money studying the market, packaging, and process modifications which affects profits), and low profitability reduce the threat of new entrants substantially (low).

Substitutes
Similar to abalone. Asia has a developed taste for sturgeon, as has Europe. Consumers are becoming worried about the declining stock of sturgeon, which is forcing them to adopt cultured substitutes. However, any substitute to the real product is perceived as inferior, and there are limited substitute options that taste like sturgeon. In addition, there is substantial product differentiation based on region and process (from farm to shelf). These factors limit the threat of substitutes (medium).

Presently, the eggs of more than 38 species of fish other than sturgeon, and three species of other animals are used to produce caviar substitutes. About 15 ‘caviar like’ preparations are known in the market using fish flesh, seaweed and others mixtures of materials of various origins as their raw material. Five products can be considered simulations. Few use caviar as a component in their production recipes and a lot of different products are presently marketed which use the name caviar as a brand.

Degree of Rivalry
Increasing demand and limited supply reduces the degree of rivalry. Australian products compete with cheap international products as well as original/ traditional caviar, which puts pressure on
profitability. The domestic players are unable to compete with imports to the nation and hence are dependent on exports. The degree of rivalry is therefore medium.

Luxury brand marketing for caviar

Provenance
Breeding sturgeon is a large investment (wild catch is forbidden due to its scarcity), hence cultivation of a particular species of fish that is a cousin or close replica of the original species becomes very important. Caviar brands can charge a supernormal profit for just the geographic history of the fish they culture. However, there is a trend in promoting the terrain in which the fish are cultured, in that this can provide distinct and unique flavour in the caviar. Certain minerals can also add to the taste and are fast becoming popular among caviar lovers.

Pricing
The price of caviar is usually determined by the supply demand scenario, however since authentic caviar (not the loosely used term) is already limited, brands try to add value through diligence in the cultivation process. Some brands charge a supernormal profit that is significantly greater than others, based on the time taken to cultivate the sturgeon and the use of painless sustainable methods of extracting the eggs from the fish. For example, Caviar de Riofrio states:

“One of the main differences that differentiate our caviar from the naccarii sturgeon to others is that our females need almost 16 years to produce caviar, double the amount of time of other caviars on the market. Furthermore, the conditions that the sturgeons are farmed in at PSN are also an important factor.”

Publicity
Publicity is mostly achieved through association with celebrity chefs, use of newsletters, participation in contests, and clientele support. Some brands also invite chefs and renowned guests to their stores/farms to view the caviar production process. This, along with offering invitations to farm tours for the general public, also proves effective for the industry.

Position
Usually small farms become part of a committee or association that then becomes their retailing and marketing arm. Others, who are big enough, open direct retailing with a good online presence to attract consumers/clients. However, end users only tend to see the brands in specialty stores or large supermarkets.

Persona
The impact of persona is limited to the history of growers, generations of caviar farming, and founder/creator’s vision.

Personage, or brand DNA
Usually adherence to government sustainability, green/clean programs, livelihood programs (or any other environmental protection programs) is used to establish the core qualities of the brand. Often pioneering ventures and innovation in techniques are cited to attract authentic caviar hunters.

Paucity
Although supply is currently low, in the future, consumer awareness and preferences will likely destroy the ‘luxury’ and ‘rare’ association with caviar and make it a mass product. Paucity is a tool that many brands use for certain specific sturgeon; however it is clear that the emerging consumer is not aware or knowledgeable enough to make the distinction. Value adding by the chef also destroys the ability of the company to reach directly to the consumer.
Performance
Performance is not generally perceived by the end user. Only expert chefs, tasters, food connoisseurs can identify the taste, look, texture and smell of good caviar. Hence the onus of performance lies mostly with the chef/restaurant etc. Therefore, purity of strain, advanced techniques, pristine culture farms, and the most stringent sustainable practices have emerged as symbols of performance for brands.

Packaging
Product takes priority in caviar packaging. Packaging has an important role in sealing, protecting the texture, shape, taste, and colour of caviar, however display and presentation are also important. Brands instil their heritage through the use of icons, logos, and signage in gift packs. Often packaging includes expensive materials, for example jewels or gold plating, as a symbol of exclusivity and extravagance.

The Kaspia Matriochkas presented in Limoges porcelain is a new range of caviar display and an example of the use of expensive and exclusive materials in packaging. The collaboration between Caviar Kaspia and Maison Carpenet is the result of a range of original caviar displays, rare and precious, with originality and sophistication, emphasising the caviar as well as the tradition. This fine and delicate collection, emblematic of the purest French craft, was designed by designer Georges Riu. The four Russian dolls in the collection are real hand-made jewellery, decorated with black enamel, designed with fine gold and set with a golden brass clasp. They build on their association to Russian royalty and historical significance of Russian sturgeon.

Some brands focus on the experience of consuming the caviar from their packaging, while other brands focus on building association with style and heritage through adoption of an artist’s or designer’s persona. A limited edition Love Collection by Caviar House was inspired by Yves Saint Laurent’s self-made greeting cards.
Roadmap for Luxury Food (Seafood)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drivers</th>
<th>Changing markets and value chains</th>
<th>Actors and actions</th>
<th>Solutions, products and applications</th>
<th>Enabling technologies and materials</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ready-cracked claws, high meat to shell ratio, meat selection packs (Lobsters), sustainability processes drive growth</td>
<td>Increasing awareness about overfarming, concern about diseases &amp; sustainable methods contribute to considerable buyer power</td>
<td>Australian exporters are high value exporters suffering from high AUS dollar</td>
<td>Use of brand icon/personal ambassador on packaging by portraying his character/logo/image</td>
<td>Environmentally friendly, temperature resistant, convenience focused, innovative materials</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low production costs &amp; labour costs in China, Thailand, New Zealand make these become mainstream in the luxury market</td>
<td>Intense international competition on price, market volatility causes the industry to become more competitive</td>
<td>Limited edition designs, limited edition packaging, designed/artist brand icons &amp; packaging as memorabilia</td>
<td>Demand of designer gift packaging</td>
<td>Using pop/bright colors, bold, artistic fonts &amp; unique intrigue inspiring names to draw attention</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australian marine regions have low productivity additional to ecological restrictions imposed by the government under &quot;clean green campaign&quot;</td>
<td>Increasing awareness about overfarming, concern about diseases &amp; sustainable methods contribute to considerable buyer power</td>
<td>Build on provenance through the aroma, ingredients &amp; taste of the product — a distinctive mineral taste due to specific rocks found in the waters of a region</td>
<td>Build on provenance through the aroma, ingredients &amp; taste of the product — a distinctive mineral taste due to specific rocks found in the waters of a region</td>
<td>Build on provenance through the aroma, ingredients &amp; taste of the product — a distinctive mineral taste due to specific rocks found in the waters of a region</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tension between consumers, producers &amp; distributors, need for clear regulations</td>
<td>Consolidation of small farmers' unions &amp; co-operations through government measures</td>
<td>Growing competition in global market from cost-competitive New Zealand &amp; Asian countries</td>
<td>Presence in exclusive/elite restaurants, boutiques or delicatessen</td>
<td>Presence in exclusive/elite restaurants, boutiques or delicatessen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intense international competition on price, market volatility causes the industry to become more competitive</td>
<td>Consolidation of small farmers' unions &amp; co-operations through government measures</td>
<td>Growing competition in global market from cost-competitive New Zealand &amp; Asian countries</td>
<td>Presence in exclusive/elite restaurants, boutiques or delicatessen</td>
<td>Presence in exclusive/elite restaurants, boutiques or delicatessen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Consolidation of small farmers' unions &amp; co-operations through government measures</td>
<td>Growing competition in global market from cost-competitive New Zealand &amp; Asian countries</td>
<td>Presence in exclusive/elite restaurants, boutiques or delicatessen</td>
<td>Presence in exclusive/elite restaurants, boutiques or delicatessen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Consolidation of small farmers' unions &amp; co-operations through government measures</td>
<td>Growing competition in global market from cost-competitive New Zealand &amp; Asian countries</td>
<td>Presence in exclusive/elite restaurants, boutiques or delicatessen</td>
<td>Presence in exclusive/elite restaurants, boutiques or delicatessen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure B3. Roadmap for seafood as luxury food
**Truffles**

The Australian truffle industry originated in Tasmania with the establishment of the first truffière in 1992, and the harvest of the first Australian French black truffle in 1999. During the 1990s, the Rural Industries Research and Development Corporation (RIRDC) assisted the industry by supporting a number of research projects and industry awards. The industry has since grown to a new level of maturity over the last ten years. It now appears to be entering a new phase of industry investment and growth.

Truffières are now established and producing in Victoria, New South Wales, the ACT, South Australia and southern Queensland. With limited supply and robust world prices for the prized French black truffle, Australia has an opportunity to establish itself as the largest supplier in the southern hemisphere.

**Opportunity landscape to trade-up**

**Strengths**

- Strong demand and huge potential for export to Europe and Asia.
- Reduction in worldwide production levels has resulted in sustained demand and escalating prices and this is expected to continue.
- The target market for supply is the top echelon restaurants; very selective marketing makes the product less vulnerable to price cycling or global economic pressure.
- The Australian truffle harvest season is six months apart from that of Europe so there is no direct competition with traditional truffle growers.
- Existing high interest by potential growers to enter the truffle industry.
- RIRDC reports indicate that expected future expansion of truffle production will not cause the saturation of the market in the foreseeable future.
- A truffière only requires small acreage to grow a commercially viable crop.
- An established truffière requires only small maintenance operations with low labour requirements to maintain and harvest the crop annually.
- The ATGA (Australian Truffle Growers Association) is an industry body providing network support to growers and good vector for information and promotion.
- The successful truffle growing areas of Europe are climatically similar (Mediterranean) to regions of Australia.

**Weaknesses**

- Current operating inoculating nurseries resisting change to trufficulture practices or adhering to a quality/accreditation scheme.
- Existing inoculation nurseries and truffières with their own business model and agenda not wanting to communicate or be involved in the ATGA or adopt industry guidelines.
- In Australia there is a lack of research and development (R&D) into trufficulture and a general lack of understanding among truffle growers.
- Many current truffle growers are retiring professionals without any horticultural/agricultural qualifications or experience.
- Much of the overseas private R&D is controlled by corporate organisations and is either not available under commercial agreements or not easily accessible.
- Some published R&D in Europe is in the native language and is yet to be translated.
- The amelioration of Australia’s low pH soil, eventuating in the soil then becoming calcareous, is expensive to counteract and will require periodic maintenance with lime.
• Some agricultural soils that are high in nutrient levels or contain residual agricultural chemicals will not be suitable for truffle growing.
• There are a low proportion of trees, within truffières, currently producing truffles and low levels of production throughout the Australian industry.

**Opportunities**

• Potential to access new export markets that are seeking quality assured French black truffles and French black truffle products.
• Develop a ‘clean green’ reputation for supplying a pure and premium quality of French black truffle.
• Truffles offer a viable alternative to conventional horticultural crops for commercial producers. Attractive to small acreage property owners and hobby farmers.
• The mystique, folklore and misunderstandings surrounding trufficulture produce many inconsistencies and knowledge deficiencies that need to be addressed.
• Training for new and existing truffle growers in a range of horticultural skills and trufficulture techniques.
• Development of strong international networks and forums between truffle growers, researchers, government bodies and universities will enhance and bridge the knowledge deficiencies.
• Providing a greater knowledge bank and bridging the skills deficiencies will see improved truffle production levels and ensure the sustainability of the industry.
• Developing a suitable method of vegetative propagation of *Quercus* sp. (oak trees) will remove one variable arising from genetic differences in seed grown stock.

**Threats**

• Where Chinese truffles are discovered growers may not want to allow removal and disinfection of the truffière.
• Not all nurseries will want to adopt a new QA (quality assurance) system or an accreditation system.
• The periodic auditing of nurseries will be time consuming and costly to industry members.
• Inoculation nurseries that do not comply and growers not following industry standards may cause a split or segregation in the truffle industry.
• Information about truffles is scattered; throughout the world, and indeed in Australia, there are many varied theories and misguided opinions regarding truffle growing requirements and trufficulture practices.
• Being a unique subterranean symbiotic mycorrhizal fungus, the traditional agricultural growing and disease control methods can be detrimental to truffles, such as phosphate fertiliser, fungicides and herbicides.
• The depth of a global economic depression would affect the short-term potential of truffle market expansion.

**Industry analysis**

**Note:** Insufficient data available for full-fledged analysis of truffles.

**Drivers for industry growth**

• Growth in Australian market demand for French black truffles grown in Australia
• Counter-seasonal exports to northern hemisphere markets
• Asian market proximity and growth in demand for Australian truffles
• Continued limited supply of truffles in Europe
- Knowledge of production and demand factors affecting market pricing trends
- Increased yields of truffles from Australian truffières
- Development of quality standards to ensure consistency of Australian truffles
- Development of preserved and value-added truffle products using Australian truffles
- Development of technical and research resources for the industry
- Efficient communication and management of whole-of-industry issues.

**Constraints for industry growth and sustainability**
- Variable understanding of strategic export markets such as Asian markets
- Lack of consumer and market education about Australian truffles
- Variable understanding between growers on optimal climate and soil conditions to grow truffles in Australia
- Variable knowledge between growers on truffière establishment, tree handling and management systems to maximise the growth of truffles in Australia
- Variable yields, volumes and quality of Australian truffles
- Lack of quality assurance for propagation of seedlings and trees using guaranteed sources of inoculum
- Biosecurity risks especially from imported truffles
- Lack of guidance on quality grading standards for Australian truffles
- Competition and/or substitution from other country suppliers
- Variability of grower skill levels
- Lack of access to technical and research resources
- Limited further processing facilities for Australian truffles.

**Luxury brand marketing for truffles**

**Provenance**

Truffles are cultivated in specific regions, and the change in terrain/soil affects the taste and texture of truffles drastically. For example, fine quality truffles are found only in the Manjimup region of Western Australia. Farmers also use the ‘country of origin factor’, for example truffles initially imported from France are sold as French Black Truffles (scarce and unique in taste and texture).

**Pricing**

Prices of truffles depend on the size and type of truffle farmed, but demand and supply affect the prices in the domestic market as well. The kind of host trees used also affect the taste and hence the pricing.

**Publicity**

Newsletters, festivals, fairs and special events have become a platform for small and fragmented truffle farmers. Big farms use media releases, interviews, and competitions etc. to gain visibility and establish brand equity.

**Position**

Truffle growers mostly sell their products through auctions during the truffle season or directly from the farm. Some truffles are available at select stores. This creates scarcity in the minds of consumers and adds value for the farmers.

**Persona**

Truffles are ideally imported products, hence farmers associate the techniques adopted for cultivation around the country from which they were imported. Notably, some farmers focus on the traditional or innovative methods used to bring the finest truffles to the plate. Often the techniques
involved build the unique traits of the product for each farm (along with the region in which they are grown).

**Personage, or brand DNA**
Bigger farmers build their brand around the values and principles of their founders/family history and heritage. They use their heritage and experiences to establish trust in the product produced.

**Paucity**
Truffles are rare and the subtle flavour qualities imparted by the growing region and farmer's techniques add to this. Further availability is limited to select stores and localities and this creates the effect of paucity. Sometimes truffle sizes and unique colours are helpful in creating scarcity in the market.

**Performance**
Pairings of truffles with different cuisines, enhancement of their tastes when paired with fine wines etc. are unique ways that help farmers depict the quality of their product. Chef recommendations, especially popular chefs or owners of the finest restaurants of the world, improve the perception of their performance for the unaware consumer.

**Packaging**
Truffles are usually packed as a garnish (crushed, shaved, sliced etc.) and seen mostly in fine gourmet packaging styles, for example tins gold foiled with the brand name and nutritional information on the seal, or in traditional simple grocery style packaging of paper bags with aromatic seals and the brand colours displayed on the bag.

Farms and brands usually focus on the years of experience, heritage of the farm location, family history, awards and recognitions won to communicate product quality and premium experience to the consumer. For example, Urbani truffles use an elaborate and distinctive logo that is a symbol of the history of the brand.
Figure B4. Roadmap for truffles as luxury food.
Cheese
There are four main milk producing regions in South Australia, stretching from the south east of the state to the Barossa Mid North area.

1. The southeast of the state is regarded as an integral part of the future growth of the ‘South-West’ milk bowl. It is predominantly supported by summer irrigated pastures. This region produces over 60% of the state’s milk.

2. The River and Lakes region has been hit hard in the past by drought and severe water restrictions. However, the dairy community remaining in the region is extremely resilient and is paving the way towards a more flexible and profitable style of dairying.

3. The Fleurieu Peninsula is a predominantly dryland dairy farming area. The area is contracting in farm numbers but is holding on cow numbers and milk production. This well-known and productive dairy area is increasingly under threat from urban sprawl and competing land use. However, the farmers in the region remain committed to quality milk and herd production.

4. While the Barossa Mid North is perhaps better known for its wine and crop production, there is a thriving dairy industry still in the region, using dryland systems. Milk production has increased in the past few years, as these farmers actively aim to develop their production skills and feeding regimes.

Future opportunities
- Global dairy demand outpacing supply
- Changing economics for competing food ingredients
- Attracting investment to the industry
- Flexible and adaptable production systems
- Adopting technology to lift profits
- Widening scope for product functionality
- Building farm business skills to mitigate risk, manage volatility, and grow wealth
- Transformational advances in plant and animal technologies

Areas of industry risks/weaknesses
- Vulnerable production systems
- Attracting, retaining and developing skilled people
- Producers operating on volatile production margins
- Reduced relevance as a reliable dairy exporter
- Threats to dairy’s industry reputation
- Increased accountability and costs without effective measurement
- Moving too far away from competitive production base
- Affordability critical to dairy’s role in addressing nutritional needs

Better weather, lower input costs (particularly feed grains) and significantly higher farm gate milk prices have helped drive increased production. Despite differences in price mechanisms and sensitivities, strong commodity prices on international markets have boosted returns at the farm gate across all major exporters. The four largest exporters (biggest farm gate price growth) are the European Union, United States, Australia and New Zealand.

Opportunities are linked to high value niche products such as speciality cheeses, milk from small regional processors, and organic and biodynamic dairy production, which are becoming more
popular. Domestic consumption of dairy produce has also increased gradually during the last five years. In Asia, increased demand for dairy products is providing additional export opportunities.

Major companies operating in South Australia are National Foods, Warrnambool Cheese and Butter Factory, Kraft, Murray Goulburn and Goodman Fielder. About 1,500 people are directly employed on farms and a further 400 in processing.
Roadmap for Luxury Food (Cheese)

Drivers
- Strong growth in dairy consumption & imports of Asia
- Strong government support to dairy infrastructure
- Increasing Australian dollar competitiveness
- Value of specialty cheeses rose as cheddar prices fell in 5 years
- Domestic sales (47%) largely through big supermarkets; high buyer power; artisan cheese sales mostly through specialty food stores
- High licence restrictions limit entrants, concentrated buyers & fragmentation trouble industry
- Cost & production efficiency
- Support of co-operatives has created a differentiated & fragmented industry

Changing markets and value chains
- Emerging private labels of huge retailers with immense marketing & manufacturing muscle
- Growing retail formats of "cheese providers" supporting artisans & cottage industry
- Consolidation of small farmer’s unions & co-operatives through government measures
- Globalisation of trade agreements; entering premium & artisan cheese segments
- Independent cheesemakers entering retail
- Growing competition in global market from cost-competitive New Zealand
- Growing brands launched by Dairy co-operatives
- New channels like cheese bars, vineyards with boutiques within the farm

Actors and actions
- Build authenticity = associate to country & its style/art of cheese making through the travel/life of cheesemaker/producer/farmer
- Pricing is primarily based on the technique & the repute of the cheesemaker/chef
- Presence in exclusive/exclusive restaurants, boutiques or delicatessen
- Placidity spends on building association to culture, art & traditional heritage
- Event participation like in cheese making & tasting competitions to build equity
- Build on provenance through the aroma, ingredients & taste of the product = a definitive mineral taste due to specific French technique of making brie

Solutions, products and applications
- Use of brand icon/personal ambassador on packaging by portraying his signage/logo/image
- Focus on attractiveness & uniqueness in packaging style
- Transparent packaging to display product value & reinforce freshness
- Environmentally friendly, temperature resistant, convenience focused innovative materials

Enabling technologies and materials
- Limitless designs & materials inspired or created by designers/artists/brand icons
- Using pop/bright colors, bold, artistic fonts & unique intrigue inspiring names to draw attention

Present, 2015 | Medium, 2020 | Long, 2025

Stronger presence in Asian and Australian high value food and confectionary markets.

Successful luxury products using locally sourced raw materials or talent.

Figure B5. Roadmap for cheese as luxury food
Luxury brand marketing for cheese

Provenance
Luxury cheese brands rely on the history and generations of the community involved in cheese making. For example, Pyengana Dairy promoted its finest quality cheddar based on four generations of technique and expertise. Some brands, such as Bruny Island, build their provenance on being exclusive producers of certain cheeses.

Pricing
Price depends on the taste, texture, and paucity/scarcity of the licenses for cheese production. The value add in luxury cheeses is dependent entirely on the cheesemaker. Prices would reflect the cheesemaker's popularity and status in the market.

Publicity
Cheesemakers become the face of brands/co-operatives. Publicity activities include guest interviews with cheesemakers, participation in fairs and international competitions, media releases and newsletters. Often public relations strategies target restaurant owners and winemakers as well as consumers.

Position
Positioning in expensive delicatessen outlets, availability in select speciality stores, trade fairs, direct orders, and boutique stores can create a sense of scarcity and target selective consumers. Some cheesemakers have their own boutique outlets, helping them leverage their brand appeal through the experience offered to the consumer.

Persona
The cheesemaker's personal touch and vision creates the persona. For example, organic cheeses produced by L’artisan Cheese bases itself in the vision of its cheesemaker Matthieu Megard. To build the brand, the cheesemaker uses traditional cheesemaking techniques, and provides a tranquil garden for consumers to experience the freshness of the variety. Complex tastes or simple flavours are also dependent on the cheesemaker’s style. Some cheeses raise the particular profile of regional cuisine, through food and wine pairings, thus inheriting the persona of the region they are based on.

Personage, or brand DNA
Usually the personality of the cheesemakers becomes the crux to build the brand. The signature styles of cheesemakers are identifiable in the taste, variety and techniques used in cheesemaking. However, bigger brands focus on their founder’s vision and thought.

Paucity
Because of government regulations which currently do not allow unpasteurised cheese, the production of these cheeses is limited in Australia. Government regulations (national and local) affect the availability, as does seasonality, creating scarcity of the product. The region also affects the kind of cheese produced. Cattle feed also adds subtle flavours to cheese and this factor is also used by many brands to create scarcity, enabling them to charge a significant premium.

Performance
Awards, certifications, licences and reviews by expert cheesemakers, chefs, and connoisseurs act as surrogates for cheese performances. These are often used by brands and shop owners to build brand equity.
Packaging
Cheese packaging styles usually focus on attracting consumers, displaying the product and portraying the freshness and goodness, and nutritional value. Some brands rely on convenience as a packaging factor, but for most products, brand identity takes precedence over other functional benefits.

In cheese, the artisan’s, and the brand’s, ability to reflect itself on the shelf becomes very important as it also reflects the collection and taste. The variety of available packaging for cheeses helps individual products stand out. This often means including the cheesemaker’s or celebrity chef’s seal of approval, symbol or signage to leverage the historical significance, and unique branding designs to appeal more modern and experimental clientele.
Wagyu Beef

Farms in southern areas of South Australia are generally more intensive than their northern counterparts. Farmers in this area generally run European and British breeds, preferred for their ability to gain weight and produce favourable quality meat. After being slaughtered at varying ages, meat from these cattle is typically sold into high value markets. These include Korea, Russia and Japan.

The convention for the naming of a beef breed is that the breed named on the packet, in the butcher’s window, or on the menu, is the breed of the bull that fathered the animal. This means an Aberdeen Angus steak will have come from a pure-bred Aberdeen bull, but the cow could have been a Hereford, or more likely a dairy breed such as Friesian or Holstein. This practice is legal, but misleading. It also makes it hard for purebred producers to get the message across that their meat has particular qualities. If the beef is not from Japan and simply labelled ‘Wagyu’ it is likely to be only half Wagyu, that is, the progeny of a non-Wagyu cow inseminated with Wagyu sperm.

A major strength of the Australian beef industry is its disease free, ‘clean and green’ image. The adoption of the National Livestock Identification System (NLIS) assists with this. The NLIS requires cattle to be given an electronic identification ear tag at an early age. As the animal progresses through the supply chain, it can be tracked via the NLIS\textsuperscript{110}.

Opportunity landscape to trade-up

**Strengths**

- Efficient production methods
- ‘Clean green’ product image because of NLIS that ensures tracking
- Major meat exporter

**Opportunities**

- Management of production risk
- Increasing acceptance of Wagyu varieties especially in terms of breeding/feeding/treatment of cattle
- Variation in Wagyu and Kobe beef tastes depending on local preferences
- Increased demand from Asia markets
- Despite the fact that the US has a much larger cattle herd compared to Australia, it services high-value markets. This gives Australia an opportunity to provide for its significant hamburger market. The beef that enters this market is typically boxed beef that comes from northern producers.
- Attainment of greater efficiencies

**Weaknesses**

- Volatile global commodity markets
- Farmers do not reveal the secrets for premium quality beef (as in Kobe) (i.e. diet, techniques, breeding etc.) adding to the mystery and experience of tasting the meat
- Concentration of processing capacity
- Climatic variability
- Easily affected by recession as in 2008-11 (led to exits of many breeders)

**Threats**

- Input prices and costs are very high, risky capital business
- Disease risk from imported stock
- Trade restrictions on exports such as followed by Japan (as highly concentrated markets increase vulnerability to changes in trade agreements and safeguards)
- Climate change

**Industry analysis**

**Demand**
The disease free status and traceability of the Australian beef industry provides a competitive advantage. Increasing international demand for protein means that the future of the Australian beef industry is bright.

**Supplier power**
Diverse distribution channels and critical production inputs are similar, which decreases USP, however opportunities in variations in farming techniques can increase the power of suppliers in the future, and increasing trends towards sustainable and organic, clean green farming may further strengthen their power. Supplier power is medium.

**Buyer power**
Since Australian suppliers deal with premium high quality products, the consumer has low price sensitivity, and product is important to the customer, which reduces the power of the consumer. Awareness about industry concerns of over-farming, disease, and organic farming will also help increase preference for Australian Wagyu beef. Buyer power is therefore medium.

**Threat of new entrants to the market**
High capital requirements and strong brand names are important, advanced technologies are required, customers are loyal to existing brands, entry barriers are high, building stock is time intensive, there is a high learning curve and geographical locations are limited. The threat of new entrants to the market is low.

**Substitutes**
Cheaper variants of Wagyu can threaten demand, especially if these substitutes can compete at taste levels, as processes are easy to imitate. Significant investments are required in innovation and R&D. But consumers still look for the authentic breed, therefore the threat is medium.

**Degree of Rivalry**
Large industry size and increasing demand for Wagyu beef, low exit barriers, small sized breeders, seeders, processing units mean the degree of rivalry is low.

**Luxury brand marketing for Wagyu beef**

**Provenance**
The definition of ‘Wagyu beef’ is very specific to regions in Japan. It is ideally the cattle that is born and bred in Japan. However, Australian breeders use the term 'Wagyu' even if they simply import the calves from the region. Therefore provenance and the strains of the calves bred becomes a very important attribute. Unfortunately brands cannot only rely on this as a lot of consumers are unaware or ignorant of the beef origins they are consuming.
**Pricing**
International pricing decides local beef prices because Australian brands compete with international brands. However Wagyu beef pricing is also dependent on the breed, the quality of fat, quantity/fattiness of the meat, the texture, availability of quality beef in the market.

**Publicity**
Tours, visits, auction markets, competitions, media releases, newsletters and committee meetings are the main sources of communication.

**Position**
The trend is similar to that of seafood. However another medium helps establish the brand value, this being meat auctions/sampling events etc. This helps breeders form an image and build their brand’s association.

**Persona**
Breeders build brand association with their heritage and experience in breeding Wagyu. An important aspect of the breeding technique is that there are trade secrets around treatment of calves, feeding of the cows and techniques to reduce the stress when they are sent to the abbatoir. These trade secrets help establish the quality and taste of the beef. The practices, certifications, awards etc. help establish the brand value.

**Personage, or brand DNA**
Vision and heritage of the breeders/founders becomes the medium to create association to their values. Some brands use their clientele as a major source to communicate the traits of the meat produced.

**Paucity**
Scarcity is conveyed through the strains of beef available in Wagyu. Interestingly, Australia boasts of meat that is completely disease free due to geographic advantage. Cattle breeders can boast of one of the few cattle strains free of mad cow disease that infects competitor nations. This enables Australian cattle breeders to charge higher premium on Wagyu than other nations.

**Performance**
Usually, techniques used to treat the cattle, fatten the meat, taste, texture, marbled appearance etc. are signs of finest quality. These act as surrogates to check the performance, culinary potential of the meat by chefs and consumers.

**Packaging**
Wagyu beef packaging is primarily focussed on the display of the meat inside because the marbling texture of the meat is a signature of the quality of the meat. Most brands showcase the marbled texture in the most palatable fashion and add their signage to build on the heritage of the brand.

For example, Cabassi Wagyu displays its Master of Wagyu signature and personal seal of approval on their finest grade beef. Another feature that is common in all packaging is building brand equity to the country of origin of the meat, for example Japan. Most brands try to use emblems, languages, logos, colours that signify heritage ties to the nation or its tradition.

It is also important to note how traditionally home grown brands use very basic, traditional styles of packaging to differentiate themselves. For example, both tokusen Wagyu and local Japanese vendors selling hida beef use cardboard spring-tied packs stamped with the Government of Japan’s chrysanthemum seal of "official Wagyu".
Figure B6. Roadmap for Wagyu as luxury food
Market assessments for functional food

The following tables provide detailed assessments of the factors affecting the functional food market segment in specific markets: China, Hong Kong, Singapore, Japan, Malaysia, and South Korea.

NOTE: This section of the Reference Report includes summaries of luxury food actors currently present in the food ecosystem of South Australia. The portrayal is not exhaustive and the South Australian actor base is wider and constantly evolving; for example Food South Australia provides more information about supporting actors in the region (see http://foodsouthaustralia.com.au/guide-to/).
China
The following analyses comprise:
- PESTLE for Luxury Food in China
- Luxury Food Actors in China

**PESTLE analysis: Luxury food in China**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Products</th>
<th>PESTLE Analysis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Truffles</strong></td>
<td>Stable government with an increasing focus on anti-corruption drives.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Increasing affluence and disposable income of the Chinese population.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Growing interest in outward FDI to foster economic ties with the West the West FTA (free trade agreement) with Australia and New Zealand.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Government agents have been warned against extravagance especially on luxury goods.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Large population of people geared towards “aspirational living” will drive social acceptance of luxury food such as truffles.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Growing presence of local truffle industry will drive awareness.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lack of IP protection will result in value dilution for producers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>No major environmental concerns.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Luxury Chocolates</strong></td>
<td>As above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Higher disposable incomes will drive up gift-giving.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Luxury chocolate is a major gift giving area to indicate affluence.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Red Wine</strong></td>
<td>As above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Red is associated with prosperity in China and wine is seen as a symbol of sophistication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Insufficient (volume and quality) local wine production will drive an increasing demand for imported products.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>No major regulatory factors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>No major environmental concerns.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Products</td>
<td>Political</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distilled Spirits</td>
<td>As above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wagyu Beef</td>
<td>As above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Southern Bluefin Tuna</td>
<td>As above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abalone</td>
<td>As above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rock Lobster</td>
<td>As above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sturgeon Caviar</td>
<td>As above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Products</td>
<td>PESTLE Analysis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Political</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>trade are key concerns.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oysters</td>
<td>As above</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Luxury food actors in China

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Products</th>
<th>Value Chain Actors of Luxury Food in China</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Trade agents / Importers/Wholesalers/Distributors</strong></td>
<td><strong>Food Manufacturers</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Distilled Spirits</strong></td>
<td>EEDC Wines &amp; spirits, Guo Chaoren, Rémy Cointreau SA, Jebsen &amp; Co. (China) Ltd, Torres China, Summerngate, Aussino Beijing, DT Asia - Ballande Group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Products</td>
<td>Value Chain Actors of Luxury Food in China</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Trade agents / Importers/Wholesalers/Distributors</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Products</td>
<td>Value Chain Actors of Luxury Food in China</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Trade agents / Importers/Wholesalers/Distributors</strong></td>
<td><strong>Food Manufacturers</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sturgeon Caviar</td>
<td>Logosun Import And Export Trade Co. Ltd, Caspian Trading Co, Collins Caviar China, Hubei Tian Xia Sturgeon Co. Ltd, Yunnan Amuer Sturgeon Aquaculture, Dalian Zhangzidao Fishery Group Co</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Hong Kong
The following analyses comprise:

- PESTLE for Luxury Food in Hong Kong
- Luxury Food Actors in Hong Kong

**PESTLE analysis: Luxury food in Hong Kong**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product</th>
<th>PESTLE Analysis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Truffles</strong></td>
<td>There are no political regulations as far as truffle is concerned. The austerity measures for food in China do not have any impact in the luxury food segment in Hong Kong. However pro-democracy struggles have affected the whole food and beverage industry with tourism taking a hit. With booming economy and almost 14% increase in the number of millionaires over 2013, there is more demand for luxury food in the country. There have been instances when Hong Kong billionaires have purchased expensive truffles. Socialising culture is big in Hong Kong, which is one of the major financial centres of the world, and this gives opportunity for expats and high income groups to socialise in high end restaurants and bars, thus creating more demand for luxury food. No truffle cultivation in Hong Kong. None-Applicable. There is no duty or VAT on truffles import into Hong Kong.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Luxury Chocolates</strong></td>
<td>There are no political regulations as far as luxury chocolate is concerned. The austerity measures for food in China do not have any impact in the luxury food segment in Hong Kong. With a booming economy and almost 14% increase in the number of millionaires over 2013, there is more demand for luxury food in the country. A number of luxury chocolatiers have opened shops in Hong Kong which is a sign of increasing demand. Hong Kong has a tradition of gifting and this helps the luxury chocolate segment to grow. Luxury chocolatiers have a good presence in Hong Kong, and they cater to the consumers with tailor made as well as imported chocolates thereby improving the technical expertise. Excessive packaging, including those for chocolates, can pose adverse environmental concerns. Duty Free on Chocolate import into Hong Kong.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Product</td>
<td>PESTLE Analysis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red Wine</td>
<td><strong>Political</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distilled Spirits</td>
<td>There has been a relaxation of duty for distilled spirits which strength is less than 30% by volume.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wagyu Beef</td>
<td>There are no political regulations as far as Wagyu beef is concerned.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Product</td>
<td>Political</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Southern Bluefin Tuna</td>
<td>There has been a political restraint on consumption of critically endangered species such as Southern Bluefin Tuna and it has been banned in official dinners.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abalone</td>
<td>There are no political regulations as far as Abalone is concerned.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rock Lobster</td>
<td>There are no political regulations as far as Rock lobster is concerned. Hong Kong imports a large segment from Australia.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sturgeon Caviar</td>
<td>There are no political regulations as far as Caviar is concerned.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Product</td>
<td>PESTLE Analysis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Political</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>socialising with friends and family.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oysters</td>
<td>There are no political regulations as far as oyster is concerned.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Luxury Food Actors in Hong Kong

**PRODUCTS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Horticulture</th>
<th>Trade Agents/Importers</th>
<th>Wholesalers/Distributors</th>
<th>Food Manufacturers</th>
<th>Retail chains</th>
<th>Food Service</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Truffles</td>
<td>La Fortuna Gourmet Ltd, China Wave (Mennella Group), Elizabeth Venture Ltd</td>
<td>La Fortuna Gourmet Ltd, Country Fresh</td>
<td>Perigord</td>
<td>Country Fresh</td>
<td>8½ Otto e Mezzo, Divino Group, Tott’s, Grissini, The Fringe Club, Amber, Bella Vita, Cuchina, Nicholini’s, Sabatini</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Other | Luxury Chocolates | Panway Corporation Ltd | Godiva, Jean Paul Hevin, Leonidas, Vero | Godiva, Jean Paul Hevin, Leonidas, Vero | 8½ Otto e Mezzo, L’Atelier de Joël Robuchon, Lung King Heen, Bo Innovation, Garden Café Terrace |

| Alcoholic Beverages | Red Wine | Conti Int’l (Hong Kong) Trading Co Ltd, Woodside Wines and Spirits Ltd, Hong Kong Liquor Store, Macro Wines and Spirits Asia | Golden Gate, Hong Kong Liquor Store, Wickens & Co Ltd, Macro Wines and Spirits Asia | Châteaux Siran, Margaux, Lanessan, Mouton Rothschild, Lafite Rothschild | Majestic Wines, Watson’s Wines, Hong Kong Liquor Store, Wickens & Co Ltd | 8½ Otto e Mezzo, L’Atelier de Joël Robuchon, Lung King Heen, Bo Innovation, Garden Café Terrace |


<p>| Seafood | Southern Bluefin Tuna | Lok Tin Seafood Ltd, Wang Yip | On Kee, Lok Tin Seafood Ltd, Wang Yip Shark’s Fin | OceaNZ Blue, Great | On Kee, Teck Sang, DCH | 8½ Otto e Mezzo, L’Atelier de Joël Robuchon, |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRODUCTS</th>
<th>LUXURY FOOD ACTORS IN HONG KONG</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Trade Agents/Importers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Shark's Fin Ltd, Topsea Enterprises</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rock Lobster</td>
<td>Lok Tin Seafood Ltd, Ocean Presents Seafood Co Ltd, Dragon King International Limited, Surpass Trading Co. Ltd, Aq Hk Ltd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oysters</td>
<td>Lok Tin Seafood Ltd, Tomibo HK Co. Ltd, Dragon King International Limited</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Singapore

The following analyses comprise:

- PESTLE for Luxury Food in Singapore
- Luxury Food Actors in Singapore

**PESTLE analysis: Luxury food in Singapore**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Political</th>
<th>Economic</th>
<th>Socio-cultural</th>
<th>Technological</th>
<th>Legal</th>
<th>Environmental</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Red Wine</strong></td>
<td>In 2014, the Singaporean government raised the import duty on alcoholic beverages by 25%.</td>
<td>Consumers in Singapore appeared to trade up to more luxurious alcoholic drinks as their disposable incomes increased.</td>
<td>Red wine has a positive perception in terms of the health benefits gained from rich polyphenol content. With the increasing number of fine dining restaurants, the influx of wine brands and new type of wines are expected to be witnessed further in order to cater the demand of consumers</td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
<td>The Liquor Control (Supply and Consumption) Bill has been passed in Parliament. Under the new laws, the public will not be allowed to buy alcohol for take-away or consume alcohol at public places from 10.30pm to 7am daily. The new laws are expected to take effect by April 1.</td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Distilled Spirits</strong></td>
<td>Consumers also purchased more fine liquors as collectibles and also as a symbol of status. Luxury vodka is mainly well-received by the younger consumers in Singapore</td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Wagyu Beef</strong></td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
<td>Wagyu is usually imported from Australia, the United States, Japan and New Zealand. Prices range roughly from $5 for a Wagyu patty to several hundred dollars per kg. Depending on factors such as the cut, marbling grade and breed of the cattle, it can cost about double to more than 10 times the price of regular beef.</td>
<td>Singapore’s appetite for Wagyu beef is growing and the reach of the premium bovine has extended beyond expensive restaurants. Heartland supermarkets and even coffee shop stalls are serving Wagyu, with consumers increasingly willing to pay for it. Increased demand has in turn increased supply thus driving process down. Less than 5% of</td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Political</td>
<td>Economic</td>
<td>Socio-cultural</td>
<td>Technological</td>
<td>Legal</td>
<td>Environmental</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Southern Bluefin Tuna</td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
<td>Largely consumed through high end Sushi outlets in Singapore.</td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
<td>The Japanese Fisheries Agency has decided to dramatically cut the nation's catch of immature Pacific Bluefin tuna, in a bid to replenish the rapidly falling population of the prized fish. This is likely to affect supply in Singapore.</td>
<td>World Wild Life Fund Singapore launched a Singapore Seafood Guide booklet, discouraging the consumption of endangered species such as the Bluefin tuna.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abalone</td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
<td>While the appetite for abalone has grown, supply has been hit by weather conditions and tightened fishing restrictions in abalone-supplying countries such as Australia.</td>
<td>Delicacy among the majority Chinese population. Served as a tradition at Chinese New Year reunion dinners.</td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
<td>Due to the lack of space suitable for agriculture, Singapore is largely dependent for imports for most of its food products, including luxury foods.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rock Lobster</td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
<td>Considered a luxury seafood and is typically consumed through Chinese or western cuisine.</td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Truffles</td>
<td>As the Singaporean government actively promoted the island state as destination for FDI (foreign direct investment), leading to a</td>
<td>Singapore has one of the highest income per capita rates in the world, thus making it a lucrative market for these products.</td>
<td>Consumption of these products is largely viewed as status symbols as opposed to an actual preference for their taste.</td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luxury Chocolates</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sturgeon Caviar</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oysters</td>
<td>Political</td>
<td>Economic</td>
<td>Socio-cultural</td>
<td>Technological</td>
<td>Legal</td>
<td>Environmental</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>large increase in the expat community, particularly from Western / European nations, the demand for luxury foods such truffles and caviar also increased.</td>
<td></td>
<td>A small independent oyster farm growing approximate 500k Oysters at a time operates off the coast of Singapore.</td>
<td></td>
<td>Live oysters may only be imported from countries, which meet AVA's requirements for a shellfish sanitation programme. The countries currently approved for such exports are Australia, Canada, France, Ireland, the Netherlands, New Zealand, United Kingdom and USA.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Luxury food actors in Singapore

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRODUCTS</th>
<th>Horticulture</th>
<th>Other</th>
<th>Alcoholic Beverages</th>
<th>Red Meat</th>
<th>Seafood</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Importers</td>
<td>Culina, Giorgia Ferrari, Trifola</td>
<td>Godiva, Laurent Bernard Chocolati er, Sweetzertl and, Beschle Chocolati er Suisse</td>
<td>Giorgio Ferrari, J&amp;D Burleigh, Golden Hung Ho, Malt Vaul, BarWork s, LIQUOR LAND, Chuan Seng Hua t, Hai Choo Wines &amp; Spirits</td>
<td>Culina, Frosts Food &amp; Beverage, SATS, Giorgio Ferrari, Miumi Japan Food Co, Huber Butchery, WKG Enterpris e, Gourmet Partner, KSP Marketin g, Shiro Corp</td>
<td>Snorre food, Fish Internatio nal Sourcing House, Sekol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wholesalers</td>
<td>Culina, Giorgia Ferrari, Trifola</td>
<td>Godiva, Laurent Bernard Chocolati er, Sweetzertl and, Beschle Chocolati er Suisse</td>
<td>Giorgio Ferrari, J&amp;D Burleigh, Golden Hung Ho, Malt Vaul, BarWork s, LIQUOR LAND, Chuan Seng Hua t, Hai Choo Wines &amp; Spirits</td>
<td>Culina, Frosts Food &amp; Beverage, SATS, Giorgio Ferrari, Miumi Japan Food Co, Huber Butchery, WKG Enterpris e, Gourmet Partner, KSP Marketin g, Shiro Corp</td>
<td>Snorre food, Fish Internatio nal Sourcing House, Sekol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distributors</td>
<td>Culina, Giorgia Ferrari, Trifola</td>
<td>Godiva, Laurent Bernard Chocolati er, Sweetzertl and, Beschle Chocolati er Suisse</td>
<td>Giorgio Ferrari, J&amp;D Burleigh, Golden Hung Ho, Malt Vaul, BarWork s, LIQUOR LAND, Chuan Seng Hua t, Hai Choo Wines &amp; Spirits</td>
<td>Culina, Frosts Food &amp; Beverage, SATS, Giorgio Ferrari, Miumi Japan Food Co, Huber Butchery, WKG Enterpris e, Gourmet Partner, KSP Marketin g, Shiro Corp</td>
<td>Snorre food, Fish Internatio nal Sourcing House, Sekol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retail chains</td>
<td>Culina Dempsey, Delicia, Supernature, Trifola</td>
<td>Culina Dempsey, Laurent Bernard Chocolati er, Sweetzertl and, Beschle Chocolati er Suisse</td>
<td>Culina Dempsey, Legendary Spirits</td>
<td>Four seasons gourmet market, Culina Dempsey, Hubers</td>
<td>Fair Price Supermarket, Cold Storage, ShengSiong, Hock Hua</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Food service</td>
<td>Capella Hotels &amp; Resorts</td>
<td>Almost every medium to high end restaurant in</td>
<td>Almost every medium to high end restaurant in</td>
<td>Maguroya, Itacho Sushi</td>
<td>Ahh Yat restaurants</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

233
Japan

The following analyses comprise:

- PESTLE for Luxury Food in Japan
- Luxury Food Actors in Japan

**PESTLE analysis: Luxury food in Japan**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Products</th>
<th>PESTLE Analysis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Political</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **Truffles**      | Stable government with an increasing focus on aging population and austerity measures.  
                    Growing interest in outward FDI (foreign direct investment) to buoy struggling local economy.  
                    FTA (free trade agreement) with Australia and New Zealand. | Shrinking of the workforce due to aging population placing heavy burden on the economy.  
                    Austerity measures driving consumers to focus increasingly on quality over quantity. | Affluent older population seeks to indulge in high end products in small amounts.  
                    Little to no local production  
                    High focus on products that have quality accreditation due to costs. | No major regulatory guidelines. | No major environmental concerns. |
| **Luxury Chocolates** | See above | See above | Affluent older population seeks to indulge in high end products in small amounts.  
                    Established retail and importer base for high end local and imported chocolate results in a highly discerning social user base. | Small local industry looking primarily at imports.  
                    Demand for luxury chocolates from importing nations with a premium story and high end retail options continues to drive purchasing. | No major regulatory guidelines. | No major environmental concerns. |
| **Red Wine**      | See above | See above | Affluent older population seeks to indulge in high end products in small amounts.  
                    Growing entry of women into the workforce driving | Lack of local industry.  
                    High focus on quality imports particularly in fine wines with strong | No major regulatory guidelines. | No major environmental concerns. |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Products</th>
<th>PESTLE Analysis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Political</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>red wine consumption.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Economic</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>copyright and IP protection.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distilled Spirits</td>
<td><strong>Socio-cultural</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>affluent older population seeks to indulge in high end products in small amounts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>luxury alcohol consumption considered a part of Japanese culture.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Technical</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>large local industry with growing international awareness; however mainly restricted to whisky and sake.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Legal</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>follows Japanese alcoholic regulatory guidelines.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Environmental</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fears over contamination of cattle from Fukushima.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wagyu Beef</td>
<td>See above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>see above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>affluent older population seeks to indulge in high end products in small amounts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>luxury alcohol consumption considered a part of Japanese culture.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Political</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>over 60% of japanese consume Wagyu beef on a regular basis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>large local industry unable to meet demand.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>australia tends to dominate most Wagyu imports.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Economic</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>follows Japanese meat processing guidelines.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Environmental</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fears over contamination of cattle from Fukushima.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Southern Bluefin Tuna</td>
<td>see above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>see above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>highly popular product consumed as part of sushi and sashimi preparations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>established local industry but rising demand is driving increasing imports.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>regulations have been developed to restrict the manner and amount of fishing particularly in the Japan-China sea.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Political</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>presence of local industry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>increasing imports being driven by a societal demand for premium products.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Economic</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>local scientists developing technologies to increase yield by embryonic manipulation of farm cultured abalone.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>regulations have been developed to restrict the manner and amount of fishing particularly in the Japan-China sea.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Environmental</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>increasing incidence of disease among abalone species due to intensive farming and overfishing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abalone</td>
<td>see above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>see above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>presence of local industry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>increasing imports being driven by a societal demand for premium products.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Political</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>local scientists developing technologies to increase yield by embryonic manipulation of farm cultured abalone.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>regulations have been developed to restrict the manner and amount of fishing particularly in the Japan-China sea.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Environmental</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>increasing incidence of disease among abalone species due to intensive farming and overfishing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rock Lobster</td>
<td>see above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>see above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>increasing trend towards eating out fewer times but for more quality drives consumer interest in high</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>lack of large enough local industry resulting in local companies looking for technology and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>no major regulatory influences.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>increasing worries over dwindling supplies caused by climate changes and marine environments.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Products</td>
<td>PESTLE Analysis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Political</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Economic</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Socio-cultural</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Technical</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Legal</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Environmental</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>end options such as lobsters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>trading partners overseas.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sturgeon Caviar</td>
<td>See above.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>See above.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Extremely aggressive caviar demand by both middle class and rich Japanese especially among elite hotel has resulted in a large black market for caviar in Japan.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lack of local industry has driven companies such as Maruha to invest in international caviar players to gain control over supply.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Growing black market driving international pressure on Japan to address illegal imports.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Overharvesting, environmental pollution and black market trade are key concerns.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oysters</td>
<td>See above.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>See above.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Large local industry with oysters catering to both middle and upper class Japanese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Growing technology focus on increasing yields and sustainable cultivation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>No major regulatory factors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Overharvesting, environmental pollution and black market trade are key concerns.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Luxury food actors in Japan

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Products</th>
<th>Trade agents / Importers/Wholesalers/Distributors</th>
<th>Food Manufacturers</th>
<th>Retailers</th>
<th>Food Service</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Truffles</strong></td>
<td>Niigata Beer, Tamar Valley Truffles, Norin Kinrui, French F&amp;B Japan Inc, NanHua County Yunhua Green Food Stuffs Ltd, Perigord Truffles Of Tasmania</td>
<td>Hugo &amp; Victor, Godiva, Leonidas, Debauve &amp; Gallais, Lindt, Valrhona, Chocolat Moderne, Confiserie Sprunghi, Royce, Aeon supermarkets, H2O retailing, Ito-Yokado, UNY, Life supermarkets, Maruetsu retail, Max Value retail</td>
<td>Chateau Restaurant Taillevent Robuchon, Kyoto Takaragaie Prince Hotel, Intercontinental Tokyo, Prince Park Hotel, Tokyo, Hilton Tokyo, Grand Hyatt Tokyo, Hotel Okura Tokyo, Four Seasons Tokyo</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Luxury Chocolates</strong></td>
<td>Isetan Mitsukoshi Ltd, Shibuya Hikarie’s ShinQs, Xocai-Asia Taiwanese Distributors, Thornton’s Japan, ’t BOERINNEKE - MARINO, Belfine - ChocDecor, Takara Shoji Co., Ltd</td>
<td>Sotheby’s Auction House, Christie’s Auction House, Yamamy Wines, Tanakaya Liquor, Seijo Ishii, Wine Market Party Liquor, Enoteca, Aeon supermarkets, H2O retailing, Ito-Yokado, UNY, Life supermarkets, Maruetsu retail, Max Value retail</td>
<td>Chocolate Wonderland, Grand Hyatt Beijing, Hilton Grand Shanghai, Shangri-La Hotel Beijing, Wanda Sofitel Beijing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Red Wine</strong></td>
<td>Arcane Japan, ENOTECA CO., LTD, Enoteca Co., Ltd, Koto Corporation, Mikuni Wine, 21 Community Co. Ltd, Kinoshita International Company (KICO), JALUX Group</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Sotheby’s Auction House, Christie’s Auction House, Yamamy Wines, Tanakaya Liquor, Seijo Ishii, Wine Market Party Liquor, Enoteca, Aeon supermarkets, H2O retailing, Ito-Yokado, UNY, Life supermarkets, Maruetsu retail, Max Value retail</td>
<td>Chateau Restaurant Taillevent Robuchon, Kyoto Takaragaie Prince Hotel, Intercontinental Tokyo, Prince Park Hotel, Tokyo, Hilton Tokyo, Grand Hyatt Tokyo, Hotel Okura Tokyo, Four Seasons Tokyo</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Luxury food actors in Japan

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Products</th>
<th>Trade agents / Importers/Wholesalers/Distributors</th>
<th>Food Manufacturers</th>
<th>Retailers</th>
<th>Food Service</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Wagyu Beef</td>
<td>Snow Brand Foods, Nippon Shokuhin,Kobe Beef America, Ryu Mei Co Ltd, Coltibuono Trading, Global one Corporation, ANZCO Foods, Alliance Group, Blackmore Wagyu Beef, Mayura station</td>
<td>Nippon Meat Packers, ITOHAM FOODS INC. Maruha Nichiro, Prima Meat Packers</td>
<td>Yoshinoya, Sukiya, Aeon supermarkets, H2O retailing, Ito-Yokado, UNY, Life supermarkets, Maruetsu retail, Max Value retail</td>
<td>Chateau Restaurant Taillevent Robuchon, Kyoto Takaragaike Prince Hotel, Intercontinental Tokyo, Prince Park Hotel Tokyo, Hilton Tokyo, Grand Hyatt Tokyo, Hotel Okura Tokyo, Four Seasons Tokyo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abalone</td>
<td>Pesca K &amp; M Co., Ltd. Tosenbo Co. Ltd, Harvest Resource Supply (SG) Pte Ltd, OceaNZ, Wildfish Export Ltd, Australian Abalone Farms Inc, Yat Sun International Ltd</td>
<td>Kikkoman Corporation, Maruha Nichiro, Nippon Suisan Kaisha, Kyokuyo</td>
<td>Aeon supermarkets, H2O retailing, Ito-Yokado, UNY, Life supermarkets, Maruetsu retail, Max Value retail</td>
<td>Chateau Restaurant Taillevent Robuchon, Kyoto Takaragaike Prince Hotel, Intercontinental Tokyo, Prince Park Hotel, Tokyo, Hilton Tokyo, Grand Hyatt Tokyo, Hotel Okura Tokyo, Four Seasons Tokyo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sturgeon Caviar</td>
<td>Runzhao Fisheries Co., Ltd, Olma Caviar, Marky’s Specialty Food, D’artagan Caviar, Alaska Seafood Co.</td>
<td>FUJI FOODS CO., LTD, Maruhacapital Investments, Nippon Suisan Kaisha</td>
<td>Aeon supermarkets, H2O retailing, Ito-Yokado, UNY, Life supermarkets, Maruetsu retail, Max Value retail</td>
<td>Chateau Restaurant Taillevent Robuchon, Kyoto Takaragaike Prince Hotel, Intercontinental Tokyo, Prince Park Hotel, Tokyo, Hilton Tokyo, Grand Hyatt Tokyo, Hotel Okura Tokyo, Four Seasons Tokyo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Products</td>
<td>Luxury food actors in Japan</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>----------------------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Trade agents / Importers/Wholesalers/Distributors</td>
<td>Food Manufacturers</td>
<td>Retailers</td>
<td>Food Service</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oysters</td>
<td>Kunhiro Corporation, Pesca K &amp; M Co., Ltd. Tosenbo Co. Ltd, Harvest Resource Supply (SG) Pte Ltd, OceaNZ, Wildfish Export Ltd, australian Abalone Farms Inc, Yat Sun International Ltd</td>
<td>Hamamatsu Uoichi Co., Ltd, Kikkoman Corporation, Maruha Nichiro, Nippon Suisan Kaisha, Kyokuyo</td>
<td>Aeon supermarkets, H2O retailing, Ito-Yokado, UNY, Life supermarkets, Maruetsu retail, Max Value retail</td>
<td>Chateau Restaurant Taillevent Robuchon, Kyoto Takaragaike Prince Hotel, Intercontinental Tokyo, Prince Park Hotel, Tokyo, Hilton Tokyo, Grand Hyatt Tokyo, Hotel Okura Tokyo, Four Seasons Tokyo</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Malaysia

The following analyses comprise:

- PESTLE for Luxury Food in Malaysia
- Luxury Food Actors in Malaysia

**PESTLE analysis: Luxury food in Malaysia**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Products</th>
<th>Political</th>
<th>Economic</th>
<th>Socio-cultural</th>
<th>Technological</th>
<th>Legal</th>
<th>Environmental</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Truffles</td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
<td>Truffle and related truffle products are almost exclusively available in only Kuala Lumpur, the nation’s largest city.</td>
<td>While the disposable income of urbanised residents, particularly in the Kuala Lumpur, has increased, the demand for truffles is limited to expatriates and certain high net worth individuals. Consumption of luxury foods such as truffles is seen as a status symbol rather than an actual preference for its taste.</td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
<td>The cultivation of truffles in Malaysia is not possible due to its tropical climate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luxury Chocolates</td>
<td>The rapid expansion of the cocoa industry in the late 1970s and early 1980s has triggered the realisation that the multi-facettted activities of the industry would have to be coordinated and integrated under an umbrella organisation to ensure its continued health growth. Thus, the Malaysian Cocoa Board (MCB) was established.</td>
<td>Malaysia has the largest cocoa processing industry in Asia/Oceania, followed by Indonesia and Singapore. It is the 5th largest processing country in the world, after the Netherlands, the USA, the Ivory Coast and Germany.</td>
<td>Local cocoa consumption was still low at 0.5kg per capita compared to 3.5kg in developed countries. Due to a high Muslim population ratio, many luxury chocolatiers do not offer products that include alcohol.</td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
<td>Licensing and grading is carried out to ensure the quality of Malaysian cocoa beans to meet the required Malaysian standards. MCB undertakes to license wet cocoa bean processors, cocoa traders, cocoa grinders and cocoa graders. It is also the responsibility of MCB to set guidelines and standards for cocoa beans and cocoa products, and regulatory. Many luxury chocolate outlets do not serve products that include alcohol to</td>
<td>Cocoa prices are volatile and influenced by climates, pests, diseases etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Products</td>
<td>Political</td>
<td>Economic</td>
<td>Socio-cultural</td>
<td>Technological</td>
<td>Legal</td>
<td>Environmental</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Red Wine</strong></td>
<td>As a country of Muslim majority, the country’s political parties at times use the banning of alcohol in certain areas as means of satisfying certain religious fundamentalist. However popular tourist and urban areas are largely unaffected.</td>
<td>Malaysia has a relatively small consumer base for wine. Australia is the dominant supplier with 48% market share. In 2013, the import market was valued at US $75 million, amounting to 6 million litres.</td>
<td>There was a shift in preference towards wine, especially among young working adults who are becoming increasingly sophisticated with wine drinking. The perception of wine as a healthier choice than cognac and whisky further propelled demand in Malaysia. Although the majority of Malaysia’s population is comprised of Muslims whose faith prohibits alcohol consumption, wine in Malaysia remained profitable for wine companies. Cabernet and Shiraz are the two most popular red wines.</td>
<td>Malaysia lacks the climate, soil and grape variety to cultivate its own red wines.</td>
<td>Tariff for non-sparkling wine (HS 2204): (A) Import duty of RM 7 (USD 2.20) per liter; (B) Excise duty of RM 12 (USD 3.76) per liter plus 15%; (C) 5% sales tax on CIF + duty. Labels on imported wines must give a specific description of the product, the alcoholic content, as well as the primary ingredients used in production.</td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Distilled Spirits</strong></td>
<td>Despite being a country with Muslim majority population (for whom consumption of alcohol is not allowed), Malaysia ranks among the top 10 consumers of alcohol worldwide.</td>
<td>Whisky and brandy are the most popular spirits in Malaysia, which have grown in popularity due to increase in middle class Malaysian population and</td>
<td>Certain domestic distilleries produce &quot;low-end&quot; spirits for the lower socio-economic population of Malaysia.</td>
<td>See above. The legal purchasing age for alcohol in Malaysia is 18.</td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Products</td>
<td>Political</td>
<td>Economic</td>
<td>Socio-cultural</td>
<td>Technological</td>
<td>Legal</td>
<td>Environmental</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wagyu Beef</td>
<td>Malaysia imports a large proportion of its Beef.</td>
<td>Increasing wealth has resulted in more consumers indulging in high cost premium meat products.</td>
<td>While Wagyu is prised for its high marbling, there is a perception among Malaysia's that fat in Beef is unhealthy. The minority Hindu population of Malaysia is unlikely to consume beef.</td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
<td>In order to get mass acceptance in Malaysia's majority Muslim population, all meat products should be halal certified.</td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Southern Bluefin Tuna</td>
<td>The Malaysian Ministry of Agro and Fisheries Development Authorities are trying to review the Malaysian International Tuna Port</td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
<td>There is no real demand for Bluefin tuna in Malaysia, except from the small Japanese migrant population.</td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
<td>Sustainability for Bluefin tuna catch is at risk, with considerable overfishing by major fishing countries such as Japan.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abalone</td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
<td>There is currently one commercial abalone farm in Malaysia, located in the island state of Penang.</td>
<td>Abalone is considered a delicacy among the Chinese population of Malaysia (~24%) and is typically consumed at high end restaurants. Canned and dried versions are also popular.</td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rock Lobster</td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
<td>In 2012, Dardens Restaurants signed a deal for RM1.86 billion to develop the world's largest lobster aquaculture farm in Pulau Timbun Mata, Semporna, and Sabah.</td>
<td>In 2014, world’s largest seafood restaurant chain Red Lobster opened in Kuala Lumpur.</td>
<td>The recently developed iLAP, in East Malaysia is a fully integrated lobster aquaculture operation that will produce in progressive Phases more than 18 thousand metric tonnes</td>
<td>Lobsters are exempts from the recently introduced 6% GST introduced in Malaysia.</td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Products</td>
<td>Political</td>
<td>Economic</td>
<td>Socio-cultural</td>
<td>Technological</td>
<td>Legal</td>
<td>Environmental</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sturgeon Caviar</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>While the disposable income of urbanised residents, particularly in the Kuala Lumpur, has increased, the demand for caviar is limited to expatriates and certain high net worth individuals. Consumption of luxury foods such as truffles is seen as a status symbol rather than an actual preference for its taste.</td>
<td>In June 2014 it was announced that Malaysian sturgeon fish farms are being developed by the country's Federal Land Development Authority (Felda).</td>
<td>Certain activists are concerned about the potential environmental impact of sturgeon farming in Malaysia.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oysters</td>
<td>Malaysian Government had pledged to strengthen the capability of local communities to generate sustainable income through a program known as &quot;Knowledge Transfer Programme&quot; (KTP) where technological development and knowledge-transfer of farming methods has been applied to the local communities. Seed funding to start-up the programme will be provided by the government and marketing agencies are assigned to buy-back the oysters cultured by the local communities.</td>
<td>Oyster farming is a newly emerging seafood industry in Malaysia. It has enormous potential for growth, in both local and international market. The current oyster trade in Malaysia is valued at RM28 million (Malaysia’s Trade Statistics) in 2013. This represents only 14% of the demand.</td>
<td>Oysters in Malaysia are largely consumed by the Chinese population (estimated to be over 95% based on a 1995 marketing survey). Traditionally Oysters in Malaysia are cooked and have been served as part of Chinese dishes. The practice of consuming Oysters raw is only now gaining attraction in certain urban areas.</td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
<td>Oysters are exempt from the recently introduced 6% GST introduced in Malaysia.</td>
<td>Oyster farming is considered as a green aquaculture since filter-feeding bivalves are able to reduce eutrophication effects on the coastal environment.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Luxury Food Actors in Malaysia

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRODUCTS</th>
<th>Horticulture</th>
<th>Other</th>
<th>Alcoholic Beverages</th>
<th>Red Meat</th>
<th>Seafood</th>
<th>Wholesalers</th>
<th>Retail chains</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Truffles</td>
<td>Luxury Chocolates</td>
<td>Red Wine</td>
<td>Distilled Spirits</td>
<td>Wagyu Beef</td>
<td>Southern Bluefin Tuna</td>
<td>Fresh truffles almost impossible to find in retail.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Topaz Food Haven, East West Seafoods, Fatric, Sri Manisan (Hegner Asia Connect)</td>
<td>Food Concepts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Topaz Food Haven, Fatric, Felda Caviartive Blue Dream Park (producer), Perak Cavi, Sri Manisan (Hegner Asia Connect)</td>
<td>Food Concepts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Topaz Food Haven, GST Group, Fatric, Southern Rock Seafood, Sri Manisan (Hegner Asia Connect)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Topaz Food Haven, Fatric, Felda Caviartive Blue Dream Park (producer), Perak Cavi, Sri Manisan (Hegner Asia Connect)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Topaz Food Haven, GST Group, Fatric, Southern Rock Seafood, Sri Manisan (Hegner Asia Connect)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Topaz Food Haven, Fatric, Felda Caviartive Blue Dream Park (producer), Perak Cavi, Sri Manisan (Hegner Asia Connect)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Topaz Food Haven, GST Group, Fatric, Southern Rock Seafood, Sri Manisan (Hegner Asia Connect)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Topaz Food Haven, Fatric, Felda Caviartive Blue Dream Park (producer), Perak Cavi, Sri Manisan (Hegner Asia Connect)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Topaz Food Haven, GST Group, Fatric, Southern Rock Seafood, Sri Manisan (Hegner Asia Connect)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Topaz Food Haven, Fatric, Felda Caviartive Blue Dream Park (producer), Perak Cavi, Sri Manisan (Hegner Asia Connect)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Topaz Food Haven, GST Group, Fatric, Southern Rock Seafood, Sri Manisan (Hegner Asia Connect)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Topaz Food Haven, Fatric, Felda Caviartive Blue Dream Park (producer), Perak Cavi, Sri Manisan (Hegner Asia Connect)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Topaz Food Haven, GST Group, Fatric, Southern Rock Seafood, Sri Manisan (Hegner Asia Connect)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Topaz Food Haven, Fatric, Felda Caviartive Blue Dream Park (producer), Perak Cavi, Sri Manisan (Hegner Asia Connect)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Topaz Food Haven, GST Group, Fatric, Southern Rock Seafood, Sri Manisan (Hegner Asia Connect)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Topaz Food Haven, Fatric, Felda Caviartive Blue Dream Park (producer), Perak Cavi, Sri Manisan (Hegner Asia Connect)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Topaz Food Haven, GST Group, Fatric, Southern Rock Seafood, Sri Manisan (Hegner Asia Connect)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Topaz Food Haven, Fatric, Felda Caviartive Blue Dream Park (producer), Perak Cavi, Sri Manisan (Hegner Asia Connect)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Topaz Food Haven, GST Group, Fatric, Southern Rock Seafood, Sri Manisan (Hegner Asia Connect)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Topaz Food Haven, Fatric, Felda Caviartive Blue Dream Park (producer), Perak Cavi, Sri Manisan (Hegner Asia Connect)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Topaz Food Haven, GST Group, Fatric, Southern Rock Seafood, Sri Manisan (Hegner Asia Connect)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Topaz Food Haven, Fatric, Felda Caviartive Blue Dream Park (producer), Perak Cavi, Sri Manisan (Hegner Asia Connect)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Topaz Food Haven, GST Group, Fatric, Southern Rock Seafood, Sri Manisan (Hegner Asia Connect)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Topaz Food Haven, Fatric, Felda Caviartive Blue Dream Park (producer), Perak Cavi, Sri Manisan (Hegner Asia Connect)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Topaz Food Haven, GST Group, Fatric, Southern Rock Seafood, Sri Manisan (Hegner Asia Connect)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Topaz Food Haven, Fatric, Felda Caviartive Blue Dream Park (producer), Perak Cavi, Sri Manisan (Hegner Asia Connect)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Topaz Food Haven, GST Group, Fatric, Southern Rock Seafood, Sri Manisan (Hegner Asia Connect)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Topaz Food Haven, Fatric, Felda Caviartive Blue Dream Park (producer), Perak Cavi, Sri Manisan (Hegner Asia Connect)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Topaz Food Haven, GST Group, Fatric, Southern Rock Seafood, Sri Manisan (Hegner Asia Connect)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Topaz Food Haven, Fatric, Felda Caviartive Blue Dream Park (producer), Perak Cavi, Sri Manisan (Hegner Asia Connect)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Topaz Food Haven, GST Group, Fatric, Southern Rock Seafood, Sri Manisan (Hegner Asia Connect)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Topaz Food Haven, Fatric, Felda Caviartive Blue Dream Park (producer), Perak Cavi, Sri Manisan (Hegner Asia Connect)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Restaurants/Hotels?</td>
<td>Marini’s on 57</td>
<td>Marini’s on 57</td>
<td>Almost every medium to high end restaurant in Malaysia</td>
<td>Almost every medium to high end restaurant in Malaysia</td>
<td>Gyuichi</td>
<td>Very high Japanese restaurants at times.</td>
<td>Marini’s on 57 Red Lobster High end Chinese restaurants</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>--------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jason’s, Ben’s Independent Grocers Southern Rock Seafood</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
South Korea
The following analyses comprise:

- PESTLE for Luxury Food in South Korea
- Luxury Food Actors in South Korea

PESTLE analysis: Luxury food in South Korea

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product</th>
<th>PESTLE Analysis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Truffles</td>
<td>Korea has been ranked 5th in the world for ‘ease of doing business’ according to the World Bank Group, encompassing factors such as ‘trading across borders’ (where Korea ranks third); It continues to open up its market to foreign exporters with numerous bilateral, strategic economic partnerships and Free Trade Agreements.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The recent breakthroughs in the artificial cultivation of truffles in South Korea are expected to create a source of income for farmers. With higher disposable incomes and increasing interest in luxury goods, truffles are increasingly being sought after as haute cuisine items.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Truffles are considered one of the ‘Three Great Delicacies’ (Caviar, Foie Gras, Truffles), sought after as status symbols and high-class indulgences.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Korea Forest Resources Research Institute of South Jeolla Province declared that it had succeeded in artificially cultivating truffles late last year. This follows HanaBioTech's work with Dr. Ian Hall, a truffle expert from New Zealand since 2005.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Truffles have yet to be found cultivating in Korea in natural state. Artificial cultivation creates the risk of exotic cultivated species invading a native ecosystem. Sustainable cultivation is a major concern, with truffle production declining, particularly in Europe. Some experts believe climate change to contribute to this decline, whilst recently planted truffle orchards are thought to be stabilising production.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luxury Chocolates</td>
<td>As above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>South Korea's confectionery conglomerate Lotte Confectionery entered the European premium chocolate market with their acquisition of Guylian in 2008. The rise of incomes and private consumption as a result of Korea's active gifting culture, with many designated days for various gifting purposes, in which chocolates have always been a common gift good. Dark chocolates have been reported to be particularly favoured amongst the Korean consumers,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cocoa prices are volatile and influenced by climates, pests, diseases etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Cocoa prices are volatile and influenced by climates, pests, diseases etc.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product</th>
<th>PESTLE Analysis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Political</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>rapid economic development has translated to increased caloric intakes per capita, as people develop a sweet tooth and find the appeal of luxury chocolates.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red Wine</td>
<td>Korea has entered into a number of bilateral free trade agreements (FTAs) with countries such as Chile, the U.S., the E.U., Australia, and soon New Zealand. This has had significant implications on wine trade, with the elimination of import tariffs, resulting in more competitive prices.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distilled Spirits</td>
<td>Korea has entered into a number of bilateral FTAs with countries such as Chile, the U.S., the E.U., Australia, and soon New Zealand. This has had significant implications on spirits trade, with the elimination of import tariffs (formerly 15%), resulting in more competitive landed prices.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Product</td>
<td>PESTLE Analysis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Political</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>See also truffles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wagyu Beef</td>
<td>See truffles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Increasing wealth has resulted in more consumers indulging in high cost premium meat products.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Wagyu, like many other luxury food products, has seen growing popularity with the rise in wealth and disposable incomes. However, Korea also prides itself in its own beef, ‘hanwoo’, and competes strongly with other premium beef such as Wagyu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>None Applicable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Wagyu beef imports from Japan are prohibited and thus Korea imports most of its Wagyu from Australia.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sustainable production remains a main concern. As Korea bans Japanese Wagyu imports, most of its Wagyu comes from Australia where Japanese Wagyu genetics have been bred for their marbling quality in Wagyu beef.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Southern Bluefin Tuna</td>
<td>Korea has banned seafood imports from major trade country Japan based on concerns regarding radioactive contamination from the Fukushima nuclear disaster.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>See also truffles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Increasing wealth has resulted in more consumers indulging in high cost premium seafood.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bluefin tuna, or guromaguro, after its Japanese name, is highly regarded amongst Koreans. Like many other premium food products, consumption has seen growth with rising wealth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Korea is a major fishing country for Pacific Bluefin Tuna.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Korea shall take necessary measures to regulate the catches of juveniles (age 0-3) by managing Korean fishery in accordance with the Conservation and Management Measure (CMM) adopted by the Western and Central Pacific Fishery Commission.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sustainability for Bluefin tuna catch is at risk, with considerable overfishing by major fishing countries such as Japan.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Product</td>
<td>PESTLE Analysis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abalone</strong></td>
<td><strong>Political</strong> Increasing wealth has resulted in more consumers indulging in high cost premium seafood.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Economic</strong> Abalone was traditionally served as food for royalty and continues its reputation as the 'ginseng' of the sea. It is perceived to be pure, natural and nutritious, as it lives only in clean waters and feeds on seaweed. 'Sea Women' are Korean free-diving women who have long harvested abalone off the waters of Korea's southernmost Jeju Island.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Socio-cultural</strong> Korea also farms abalone from its aquacultures, which are typically more affordably priced than those harvested by 'Sea Women'.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Technological</strong> None Applicable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Legal</strong> Sustainable harvesting of abalone is a main concern. Natural abalone fetch higher prices, as they are regarded to be of higher quality.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Environmental</strong> None Applicable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Rock Lobster</strong></td>
<td><strong>Political</strong> Prior to the Korean-US FTA, lobsters were primarily reserved to premium wedding banquet halls, high-end seafood restaurants and hotel buffets. However, following the FTA, more importers and retailers have entered the market, holding large in-store promotions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Socio-cultural</strong> Like many other premium food products, consumption has seen growth with rising wealth. Canadian import lobsters are considered to be of higher quality than that of the U.S.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Technological</strong> None Applicable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Legal</strong> Sustainability remains to be the main concern for lobster harvesters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sturgeon Caviar</strong></td>
<td><strong>Political</strong> None Applicable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Economic</strong> Increasing wealth has resulted in more consumers indulging in high cost premium seafood.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Socio-cultural</strong> Caviar is considered one of the 'Three Great Delicacies' (Caviar, Foie Gras, Truffles), sought after as status symbols and high-class indulgences.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Technological</strong> Almas Caviar, a sturgeon aqua-farm in Korea, is a top supplier of caviar not only in Korea but also to Japan and the US. It imported 200 sturgeons from Russia in 1997</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Legal</strong> None Applicable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Environmental</strong> Sturgeons have been known to escape, as when a monsoon flooded the farm in the summer of 2007 and some swam away. Creates the risk of exotic cultivated species</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*See also truffles*
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product</th>
<th>PESTLE Analysis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Political</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oysters</td>
<td>See truffles</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Luxury food actors in South Korea

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Products</th>
<th>Trade agents / Importers</th>
<th>Wholesalers &amp; Distributors</th>
<th>Food Manufacturers</th>
<th>Retailers</th>
<th>Food Service</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Truffles</strong></td>
<td><strong>Chef’s Food, Cheese Market, Value Maker/Cheese Party</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Fungo &amp; Tartufo, Plantin Sàs Hòuré De Nyons, Tartufi Morra Tartufalba</strong></td>
<td><strong>Chef’s Food, Lotte Department Store, Shinsegae Department Store, Hyundai Department Store, Gourmet 494 Hanwha Galleria, Cheese Market, Cheese Party.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Grand Imperial Hotel, Grand Hilton, Novotel, Lotte Hotel, Ritzcarlton, Millennium Hilton, Sheraton Walkerhill, Hyatt Regency, Park Hyatt, Chosun Hotel, W Seoul Hotel</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Luxury Chocolates</strong></td>
<td><strong>EuroHNJ, JF&amp;B, Lotus Korea, Lotte Confectionary, Mael Daires</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Godiva, Leonidas, Laderach, Michel Cluizel, Guylian, Ferrero Rocher, Lindt &amp; Spruengli, Galler etc.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Frenchshop, Lotte Avenuel, Galleria Department Store East, Lotte Department Store, Lotte Premium, Shinsegae Premium, G-market, CU, Ministop, GS25, Godiva Chocolate Café, Gourmet 494 Hanwha Galleria</strong></td>
<td><strong>Godiva Chocolate Café</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Distilled Spirits</strong></td>
<td><strong>Saeyoung Liquor, Plaza Liquor, SeoJung Liquor, China</strong></td>
<td><strong>Jinro, Lotte Liquor BG, Muhak, Kumbokju, KAJA Wine &amp; Spirits Trading, L’Esprit de Bundang,</strong></td>
<td><strong>KAJA Wine &amp; Spirits Trading, L’Esprit de Bundang,</strong></td>
<td><strong>Pierre a Seoul Gagnaire</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Products</td>
<td>Luxury food actors in South Korea</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Many importers are members of Korea Wine &amp; Spirits Importers Association (KWSIA) and/or Korea Imported Liquor Wholesalers’ Association (KILWA).</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wagyú Beef</td>
<td>Japanese Wagyú is prohibited from trade in Korea – cannot be imported. Wagyú in Korea is primarily sourced from Australia, Kobese, Owaí Commercial, E&amp;S, Hyupjin Corp</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Southern Bluefin Tuna</td>
<td>Yangji Tuna, Blue Tuna, Tuna Factory, Marine Tuna</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abalone</td>
<td>Chamjunbok seafood, Dashima JunBok Seafood, Daewoon Seafood, Daejin Junbok Distribution, Daehan Bada, Dolphin Junbok, Bada nongjang, Banseok seafood, Elim Seafood, Youngjin Seafood, Wando Junbok Village, Wooli Seafood, Youjin Seafood, Yoonil Seafood, JungWon Seafood, JinMyung Seafood, Chanyoung Seafood, Chungsan Bada Cham Junbok, ChungHaeJin Seafood, TaePyungYang Live Fish, Wando Live Fish, Tojong Junbok seafood, Gold Sea Geum Junbok, HoonHee seafood</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rock Lobster</td>
<td>Daeho seafood, Seabank International, Daejin Jeonbok, Galleria, Garak Market, Noryangjin Fisheries Wholesale Market, Jagalchi Market, Dagil Tuna Shop, Yangji Tuna</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sturgeon Caviar</td>
<td>Chef’s Food, Blac Caviar, Zwyer Caviar, Montecito Caviar, Almas Caviar, Cheese Mall</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sturgeon Caviar</td>
<td>Sturia Caviar, Zwyer caviar, Imperial Caviar, Kaviari, Pescaviar, Cataliment S.L., Blac Caviar, Imperial Caviar, Chef’s Food, Lotte Department Store, Shinsegae Department Store, Hyundai Department Store, Gourmet 494</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grand Imperial Hotel, Grand Hilton, Novotel, Lotte Hotel, Ritzcarlton,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Wagyú Beef

Japanese Wagyu is prohibited from trade in Korea – cannot be imported. Wagyu in Korea is primarily sourced from Australia, Kobese, Owaí Commercial, E&S, Hyupjin Corp

Gourmet 494 Hanwha Galleria, Kobese

Southern Bluefin Tuna

Yangji Tuna, Blue Tuna, Tuna Factory, Marine Tuna

Gourmet 494 Hanwha Galleria, Garak Market, Noryangjin Fisheries Wholesale Market, Jagalchi Market, Dagil Tuna Shop, Yangji Tuna

Abalone

Chamjunbok seafood, Dashima JunBok Seafood, Daewoon Seafood, Daejin Junbok Distribution, Daehan Bada, Dolphin Junbok, Bada nongjang, Banseok seafood, Elim Seafood, Youngjin Seafood, Wando Junbok Village, Wooli Seafood, Youjin Seafood, Yoonil Seafood, JungWon Seafood, JinMyung Seafood, Chanyoung Seafood, Chungsan Bada Cham Junbok, ChungHaeJin Seafood, TaePyungYang Live Fish, Wando Live Fish, Tojong Junbok seafood, Gold Sea Geum Junbok, HoonHee seafood

Gourmet 494 Hanwha Galleria, Garak Market, Noryangjin Fisheries Wholesale Market, Jagalchi Market, Ulsan Seafood Market

Rock Lobster

Daeho seafood, Seabank International, Daejin Jeonbok, Galleria, Garak Market, Noryangjin Fisheries Wholesale Market, Jagalchi Market, Ulsan Seafood Market

Sturgeon Caviar

Chef’s Food, Blac Caviar, Zwyer Caviar, Montecito Caviar, Almas Caviar, Cheese Mall

Sturia Caviar, Zwyer caviar, Imperial Caviar, Kaviari, Pescaviar, Cataliment S.L., Blac Caviar, Imperial Caviar, Chef’s Food, Lotte Department Store, Shinsegae Department Store, Hyundai Department Store, Gourmet 494

Grand Imperial Hotel, Grand Hilton, Novotel, Lotte Hotel, Ritzcarlton,
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Products</th>
<th>Luxury food actors in South Korea</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Trade agents / Importers</td>
<td>Wholesalers &amp; Distributors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oysters</td>
<td>Haerim Seafood, HK Food System, HaePoong Distribution, KangDong Seafood, GeumChun Distribution, Cham Seafood, Sampoong Seafood, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oysters</td>
<td>Haerim Seafood, HK Food System, HaePoong Distribution, KangDong Seafood, GeumChun Distribution, Cham Seafood, Sampoong Seafood, etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
References


Cook, P. (2014). Recent developments in the international abalone industry. Centre of excellence in natural resource management, University of Western Australia.


Department of Industry, Government of Australia, RDAR & PIRSA (2015). Mapping Capabilities and Connections. A project conducted in the Riverland of South Australia by the Department of Industry through a partnership with RDA Murraylands and Riverland (RDAR) and PIRSA.


